UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

PUBLIC EMPLOYEES' RETIREMENT ASSOCIATION OF COLORADO, TENNESSEE CONSOLIDATED RETIREMENT SYSTEM, SJUNDE AP-FONDEN, FJÄRDE AP-FONDEN, and PENSIONSKASSERNES ADMINISTRATION A/S, Individually and On Behalf of All Others Similarly Situated,

No.

Plaintiffs,

v.

CITIGROUP INC., CHARLES O. PRINCE, SALLIE L. KRAWCHECK, GARY L. CRITTENDEN, TODD S. THOMSON, ROBERT DRUSKIN, THOMAS G. MAHERAS, MICHAEL STUART KLEIN, DAVID C. BUSHNELL, JOHN C. GERSPACH, STEPHEN R. VOLK, GEORGE DAVID and KPMG LLP,

Defendants.

TILLIE SALTZMAN, Individually and On Behalf of All Others Similarly Situated,

Plaintiff,

VS.

CITIGROUP INC., CHARLES O. PRINCE, ROBERT E. RUBIN, STEPHEN R. VOLK, SALLIE L. KRAWCHECK, GARY L. CRITTENDEN and ROBERT DRUSKIN,

Defendants.

LENNARD HAMMERSCHLAG, Individually, and On Behalf of All Others Similarly Situated,

Plaintiff

v.

CITIGROUP INC., CHARLES PRINCE, SALLIE KRAWCHECK, and GARY CRITTENDEN,

Defendants.

Electronically Filed

No. 1:07-cv-9901(SHS)

ECF CASE

Electronically Filed

No. 1:07-cv-10258(SHS)

ECF CASE

DECLARATION OF ANDREW J. ENTWISTLE

I, the undersigned, Andrew J. Entwistle, do hereby declare under the penalty of perjury pursuant to 28 U.S.C. § 1746 that the foregoing is true and correct:

- 1. I am an attorney licensed to practice law in the United States Supreme Court and the State and Federal courts serving the States of Colorado, Illinois, New Jersey, New York, and Texas, and the District of Columbia. I am the managing partner of the law firm of Entwistle & Cappucci LLP ("Entwistle & Cappucci"), counsel for Public Employees' Retirement Association of Colorado, Tennessee Consolidated Retirement System, Sjunde AP-Fonden, Fjärde AP-Fonden, and Pensionskassernes Administration A/S (together, the "Global Pension Funds"). Entwistle & Cappucci's principal office is located at 280 Park Avenue, 26th Floor, New York, New York 10017.
- 2. I submit this Declaration in support of The Global Pension Funds' Motion For an Order Partially Lifting The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 ("PSLRA") Discovery Stay, as set forth in Section 21D(b)(3)(B) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. § 78u-4(b)(3)(B).
- 3. Attached hereto as Exhibit A is a true and correct copy of the House Conference Report No. 104-369, *reprinted in* 1995 U.S.S.C.A.N. 730.
- 4. Attached hereto as Exhibit B is a true and correct copy of *Newby v. Enron Corp.*, Civil Action No. H-01-3624 Consolidated Cases, slip op., (S.D. Tex. Aug. 15, 2002).

- Attached hereto as Exhibit C is a true and correct copy of Newby v. Enron 5. Corp., Civil Action No. H-01-3624 Consolidated Cases, slip op., (S.D. Tex. Feb. 27, 2002).
- Attached hereto as Exhibit D is a true and correct copy of Senate Report 6. No. 104-98 (1995), reprinted in 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 679.
- 7. Attached hereto as Exhibit E is a true and correct copy of In re Tyco, Int'l Ltd. Multidistrict Litig., MDL No. 02-1335-B, slip op., (D.N.H. Jan. 29, 2003).

EXECUTED on the 7th day of January, 2008

Andrew J. Entwistle

Westlaw.

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369

Page 1

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

**730 P.L. 104-67, PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION REFORM ACT OF 1995

*1 SECURITIES LITIGATION REFORM

DATES OF CONSIDERATION AND PASSAGE

House: March 7, 8, December 5, 1995
Senate: June 22, 23, 26, 27, 28, December 5, 1995
Cong. Record Vol. 141 (1995)

Senate Report (Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs Committee) No. 104-98, June 19, 1995

(To accompany S. 240)
House Conference Report No. 104-369,
Nov. 28, 1995
(To accompany H.R. 1058)

HOUSE CONFERENCE REPORT NO. 104-369
November 28, 1995

Mr. Bliley, from the committee of conference, submitted the following

CONFERENCE REPORT

[To accompany H.R. 1058]

The committee of conference on the disagreeing votes of the two Houses on the amendments of the Senate to the bill (H.R. 1058), to reform Federal securities litigation, and for other purposes, having met, after full and free conference, have agreed to recommend and do recommend to their respective Houses as follows:

That the House recede from its disagreement to the amendment of the Senate to the text of the bill and agree to the same with an amendment as follows:

In lieu of the matter proposed to be inserted by the Senate amendment, insert the following:

SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE; TABLE OF CONTENTS.

- (a) Short Title.-This Act may be cited as the "Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995".
 - (b) Table of Contents.-The table of contents for this Act is as follows:

Sec. 1. Short title; table of contents.

TITLE I-REDUCTION OF ABUSIVE LITIGATION

H.R. c Gase թե թ - գրալ 1925 - SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page Ձջ ան բան - բան -

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

- Sec. 101. Private securities litigation reform.
- Sec. 102. Safe harbor for forward-looking statements.
- Sec. 103. Elimination of certain abusive practices.
- Sec. 104. Authority of Commission to prosecute aiding and abetting.
- Sec. 105. Loss causation.
- Sec. 106. Study and report on protections for senior citizens and qualified retirement plans.
- Sec. 107. Amendment to Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organization Act.
- Sec. 108. Applicability.

TITLE II-REDUCTION OF COERCIVE SETTLEMENTS

- Sec. 201. Proportionate liability.
- Sec. 203. Applicability.
- Sec. 204. Rule of construction.

TITLE III-AUDITOR DISCLOSURE OF CORPORATE FRAUD

Sec. 301. Fraud detection and disclosure.

*2 TITLE I-REDUCTION OF ABUSIVE LITIGATION

- SEC. 101. PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION REFORM.
- (a) Securities Act of 1933.-Title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.) is amended by adding at the end the following new section:
- "SEC. 27. PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION.
 - "(a) Private Class Actions.-
- "(1) In general.-The provisions of this subsection shall apply to each private action arising under this title that is brought as a plaintiff class action pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
 - "(2) Certification filed with complaint.-
- "(A) In general.-Each plaintiff seeking to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class shall provide a sworn certification, which shall be personally signed by such plaintiff and filed with the complaint, that-
- "(i) states that the plaintiff has reviewed the complaint and authorized its filing;
- "(ii) states that the plaintiff did not purchase the security that is the subject of the complaint at the direction of plaintiff's counsel or in order to participate in any private action arising under this title;
- "(iii) states that the plaintiff is willing to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class, including providing testimony at deposition and trial,

н. R. C Gase A 197- գ 4 1925 8-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page ֆ af 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

if necessary;

- "(iv) sets forth all of the transactions of the plaintiff in the security that is the subject of the complaint during the class period specified in the complaint;
- "(v) identifies any other action under this title, filed during the 3- year period preceding the date on which the certification is signed by the plaintiff, in which the plaintiff has sought to serve, or served, as a representative party on behalf of a class; and
- "(vi) states that the plaintiff will not accept any payment for serving as a representative party on behalf of a class beyond the plaintiff's pro rata share of any recovery, except as ordered or approved by the court in accordance with paragraph (4).
- "(B) Nonwaiver of attorney-client privilege.-The certification filed pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall not be construed to be a waiver of the attorney-client privilege.
 - "(3) Appointment of lead plaintiff.-
 - "(A) Early notice to class members.-
- *3 "(i) In general.-Not later than 20 days after the date on which the complaint is filed, the plaintiff or plaintiffs shall cause to be published, in a widely circulated national business-oriented publication or wire service, a notice advising members of the purported plaintiff class-
- "(I) of the pendency of the action, the claims asserted therein, and the purported class period; and
- "(II) that, not later than 60 days after the date on which the notice is published, any member of the purported class may move the court to serve as lead plaintiff of the purported class.
- "(ii) Multiple actions.-If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this title is filed, only the plaintiff or plaintiffs in the first filed action shall be required to cause notice to be published in accordance with clause (i).
- "(iii) Additional notices may be required under federal rules.-Notice required under clause (i) shall be in addition to any notice required pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
 - "(B) Appointment of lead plaintiff.-
- "(i) In general.-Not later than 90 days after the date on which a notice is published under subparagraph (A)(i), the court shall consider any motion made by a purported class member in response to the notice, including any motion by a class member who is not individually named as a plaintiff in the complaint or complaints, and shall appoint as lead plaintiff the member or members of the purported plaintiff class that the court determines to be most capable of adequately representing the interests of class members (hereafter in this paragraph referred to as the 'most adequate plaintiff') in accordance with this subparagraph.
- "(ii) Consolidated actions.-If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this title has been filed, and any party has sought to consolidate those actions for pretrial purposes or for trial, the court shall not make the determination required by clause (i)

H.R. c հրգ se դե p7-գ կ գ 1 9 2 5 8 - SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 4 af 4 8

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

until after the decision on the motion to consolidate is rendered. As soon as practicable after such decision is rendered, the court shall appoint the most adequate plaintiff as lead plaintiff for the consolidated actions in accordance with this subparagraph.

- "(iii) Rebuttable presumption.-
- "(I) In general.-Subject to subclause (II), for purposes of clause (i), the court shall adopt a presumption that the most adequate plaintiff in any private action arising under this title is the person or group of persons that-
- *4 "(aa) has either filed the complaint or made a motion in response to a notice under subparagraph (A)(i);
- "(bb) in the determination of the court, has the largest financial interest in the relief sought by the class; and
- "(cc) otherwise satisfies the requirements of <u>Rule 23 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u>.
- "(II) Rebuttal evidence.-The presumption described in subclause (I) may be rebutted only upon proof by a member of the purported plaintiff class that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff-
 - "(aa) will not fairly and adequately protect the interests of the class; or
- "(bb) is subject to unique defenses that render such plaintiff incapable of adequately representing the class.
- "(iv) Discovery.-For purposes of this subparagraph, discovery relating to whether a member or members of the purported plaintiff class is the most adequate plaintiff may be conducted by a plaintiff only if the plaintiff first demonstrates a reasonable basis for a finding that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff is incapable of adequately representing the class.
- "(v) Selection of lead counsel.-The most adequate plaintiff shall, subject to the approval of the court, select and retain counsel to represent the class.
- "(vi) Restrictions on professional plaintiffs.-Except as the court may otherwise permit, consistent with the purposes of this section, a person may be a lead plaintiff, or an officer, director, or fiduciary of a lead plaintiff, in no more than 5 securities class actions brought as plaintiff class actions pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure during any 3-year period.
- "(4) Recovery by plaintiffs.-The share of any final judgment or of any settlement that is awarded to a representative party serving on behalf of a class shall be equal, on a per share basis, to the portion of the final judgment or settlement awarded to all other members of the class. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to limit the award of reasonable costs and expenses (including lost wages) directly relating to the representation of the class to any representative party serving on behalf of the class.
- "(5) Restrictions on settlements under seal.—The terms and provisions of any settlement agreement of a class action shall not be filed under seal, except that on motion of any party to the settlement, the court may order filing under seal for those portions of a settlement agreement as to which good cause is shown for such filing under seal. For purposes of this paragraph, good cause shall exist only if publication of a term or *5 provision of a settlement agreement would cause direct and substantial harm to any party.

H.R. c Gase A 197-գ կ 19258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page ֆ af 4 8

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

- "(6) Restrictions on payment of attorneys' fees and expenses.-Total attorneys' fees and expenses awarded by the court to counsel for the plaintiff class shall not exceed a reasonable percentage of the amount of any damages and prejudgment interest actually paid to the class.
- "(7) Disclosure of settlement terms to class members.-Any proposed or final settlement agreement that is published or otherwise disseminated to the class shall include each of the following statements, along with a cover page summarizing the information contained in such statements:
- "(A) Statement of plaintiff recovery.-The amount of the settlement proposed to be distributed to the parties to the action, determined in the aggregate and on an average per share basis.
 - "(B) Statement of potential outcome of case.-
- "(i) Agreement on amount of damages.-If the settling parties agree on the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this title, a statement concerning the average amount of such potential damages per share.
- "(ii) Disagreement on amount of damages.-If the parties do not agree on the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this title, a statement from each settling party concerning the issue or issues on which the parties disagree.
- "(iii) Inadmissibility for certain purposes.—A statement made in accordance with clause (i) or (ii) concerning the amount of damages shall not be admissible in any Federal or State judicial action or administrative proceeding, other than an action or proceeding arising out of such statement.
- "(C) Statement of attorneys' fees or costs sought.-If any of the settling parties or their counsel intend to apply to the court for an award of attorneys' fees or costs from any fund established as part of the settlement, a statement indicating which parties or counsel intend to make such an application, the amount of fees and costs that will be sought (including the amount of such fees and costs determined on an average per share basis), and a brief explanation supporting the fees and costs sought.
- "(D) Identification of lawyers' representatives.—The name, telephone number, and address of one or more representatives of counsel for the plaintiff class who will be reasonably available to answer questions from class members concerning any matter contained in any notice of settlement published or otherwise disseminated to the class.
- "(E) Reasons for settlement.-A brief statement explaining the reasons why the parties are proposing the settlement.
- *6 "(F) Other information.-Such other information as may be required by the court.
- "(8) Attorney conflict of interest.-If a plaintiff class is represented by an attorney who directly owns or otherwise has a beneficial interest in the securities that are the subject of the litigation, the court shall make a determination of whether such ownership or other interest constitutes a conflict of interest sufficient to disqualify the attorney from representing the plaintiff class.
 - "(b) Stay of Discovery; Preservation of Evidence.-

H.R. c hase algorithms. c hase algorithms. c has a second of the control of the

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

- "(1) In general.-In any private action arising under this title, all discovery and other proceedings shall be stayed during the pendency of any motion to dismiss, unless the court finds, upon the motion of any party, that particularized discovery is necessary to preserve evidence or to prevent undue prejudice to that party.
- "(2) Preservation of evidence.-During the pendency of any stay of discovery pursuant to this subsection, unless otherwise ordered by the court, any party to the action with actual notice of the allegations contained in the complaint shall treat all documents, data compilations (including electronically recorded or stored data), and tangible objects that are in the custody or control of such person and that are relevant to the allegations, as if they were the subject of a continuing request for production of documents from an opposing party under the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
- "(3) Sanction for willful violation.—A party aggrieved by the willful failure of an opposing party to comply with paragraph (2) may apply to the court for an order awarding appropriate sanctions.
 - "(c) Sanctions for Abusive Litigation. -
- "(1) Mandatory review by court.-In any private action arising under this title, upon final adjudication of the action, the court shall include in the record specific findings regarding compliance by each party and each attorney representing any party with each requirement of <u>Rule 11(b)</u> of the <u>Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u> as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion.
- "(2) Mandatory sanctions.—If the court makes a finding under paragraph (1) that a party or attorney violated any requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion, the court shall impose sanctions on such party or attorney in accordance with Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. Prior to making a finding that any party or attorney has violated Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the court shall give such party or attorney notice and an opportunity to respond.
 - "(3) Presumption in favor of attorneys' fees and costs.-
- "(A) In general.-Subject to subparagraphs (B) and (C), for purposes of paragraph (2), the court shall adopt a presumption that the appropriate sanction-
- *7 "(i) for failure of any responsive pleading or dispositive motion to comply with any requirement of <u>Rule 11(b)</u> of the <u>Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u> is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred as a direct result of the violation; and
- "(ii) for substantial failure of any complaint to comply with any requirement of <u>Rule 11(b)</u> of the <u>Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u> is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred in the action.
- "(B) Rebuttal evidence.-The presumption described in subparagraph (A) may be rebutted only upon proof by the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed that-
- "(i) the award of attorneys' fees and other expenses will impose an unreasonable burden on that party or attorney and would be unjust, and the failure to make such an award would not impose a greater burden on the party in whose favor sanc-

н. R. C Gase A: 97- GV 41 9258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 7 of 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

tions are to be imposed; or

- "(ii) the violation of $\underline{\text{Rule 11(b)}}$ of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure was de minimis.
- "(C) Sanctions.-If the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed meets its burden under subparagraph (B), the court shall award the sanctions that the court deems appropriate pursuant to <u>Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u>.
- "(d) Defendant's Right to Written Interrogatories.—In any private action arising under this title in which the plaintiff may recover money damages only on proof that a defendant acted with a particular state of mind, the court shall, when requested by a defendant, submit to the jury a written interrogatory on the issue of each such defendant's state of mind at the time the alleged violation occurred.".
- (b) Securities Exchange Act of 1934.-Title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (78a et seq.) is amended by inserting after section 21C the following new section:
- "SEC. 21D. PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION.
 - "(a) Private Class Actions.-
- "(1) In general.-The provisions of this subsection shall apply in each private action arising under this title that is brought as a plaintiff class action pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
 - "(2) Certification filed with complaint.-
- "(A) In general.-Each plaintiff seeking to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class shall provide a sworn certification, which shall be personally signed by such plaintiff and filed with the complaint, that-
- "(i) states that the plaintiff has reviewed the complaint and authorized its filing;
- "(ii) states that the plaintiff did not purchase the security that is the subject of the complaint at the direction *8 of plaintiff's counsel or in order to participate in any private action arising under this title;
- "(iii) states that the plaintiff is willing to serve as a representative
 party on behalf of a class, including providing testimony at deposition and trial,
 if necessary;
- "(iv) sets forth all of the transactions of the plaintiff in the security that is the subject of the complaint during the class period specified in the complaint;
- "(v) identifies any other action under this title, filed during the 3- year period preceding the date on which the certification is signed by the plaintiff, in which the plaintiff has sought to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class; and
- "(vi) states that the plaintiff will not accept any payment for serving as a representative party on behalf of a class beyond the plaintiff's pro rata share of any recovery, except as ordered or approved by the court in accordance with paragraph (4).
 - "(B) Nonwaiver of attorney-client privilege.-The certification filed pursuant

H.R. c Gase A 197-գ կ 19258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page ֆ af 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

to subparagraph (A) shall not be construed to be a waiver of the attorney-client privilege.

- "(3) Appointment of lead plaintiff.-
- "(A) Early notice to class members.-
- "(i) In general.-Not later than 20 days after the date on which the complaint is filed, the plaintiff or plaintiffs shall cause to be published, in a widely circulated national business-oriented publication or wire service, a notice advising members of the purported plaintiff class-
- "(I) of the pendency of the action, the claims asserted therein, and the purported class period; and
- "(II) that, not later than 60 days after the date on which the notice is published, any member of the purported class may move the court to serve as lead plaintiff of the purported class.
- "(ii) Multiple actions.-If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this title is filed, only the plaintiff or plaintiffs in the first filed action shall be required to cause notice to be published in accordance with clause (i).
- "(iii) Additional notices may be required under federal rules.- Notice required under clause (i) shall be in addition to any notice required pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
 - "(B) Appointment of lead plaintiff.-
- "(i) In general.-Not later than 90 days after the date on which a notice is published under subparagraph (A)(i), the court shall consider any motion made by a purported class member in response to the notice, including any motion by a class member who is not individually named as a plaintiff in the complaint or *9 complaints, and shall appoint as lead plaintiff the member or members of the purported plaintiff class that the court determines to be most capable of adequately representing the interests of class members (hereafter in this paragraph referred to as the 'most adequate plaintiff') in accordance with this subparagraph.
- "(ii) Consolidated actions.—If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this title has been filed, and any party has sought to consolidate those actions for pretrial purposes or for trial, the court shall not make the determination required by clause (i) until after the decision on the motion to consolidate is rendered. As soon as practicable after such decision is rendered, the court shall appoint the most adequate plaintiff as lead plaintiff for the consolidated actions in accordance with this paragraph.
 - "(iii) Rebuttable presumption.-
- "(I) In general.-Subject to subclause (II), for purposes of clause (i), the court shall adopt a presumption that the most adequate plaintiff in any private action arising under this title is the person or group of persons that-
- "(aa) has either filed the complaint or made a motion in response to a notice under subparagraph (A)(i);
- "(bb) in the determination of the court, has the largest financial interest in the relief sought by the class; and
 - "(cc) otherwise satisfies the requirements of Rule 23 of the Federal Rules of

н. R. C Gase A 197- գ կ 1925 8-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page ֆ af e 4 8

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

Civil Procedure.

- "(II) Rebuttal evidence.-The presumption described in subclause (I) may be rebutted only upon proof by a member of the purported plaintiff class that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff-
 - "(aa) will not fairly and adequately protect the interests of the class; or
- "(bb) is subject to unique defenses that render such plaintiff incapable of adequately representing the class.
- "(iv) Discovery.-For purposes of this subparagraph, discovery relating to whether a member or members of the purported plaintiff class is the most adequate plaintiff may be conducted by a plaintiff only if the plaintiff first demonstrates a reasonable basis for a finding that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff is incapable of adequately representing the class.
- "(v) Selection of lead counsel.-The most adequate plaintiff shall, subject to the approval of the court, select and retain counsel to represent the class.
- *10 "(vi) Restrictions on professional plaintiffs.-Except as the court may otherwise permit, consistent with the purposes of this section, a person may be a lead plaintiff, or an officer, director, or fiduciary of a lead plaintiff, in no more than 5 securities class actions brought as plaintiff class actions pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure during any 3-year period.
- "(4) Recovery by plaintiffs.-The share of any final judgment or of any settlement that is awarded to a representative party serving on behalf of a class shall be equal, on a per share basis, to the portion of the final judgment or settlement awarded to all other members of the class. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to limit the award of reasonable costs and expenses (including lost wages) directly relating to the representation of the class to any representative party serving on behalf of a class.
- "(5) Restrictions on settlements under seal.—The terms and provisions of any settlement agreement of a class action shall not be filed under seal, except that on motion of any party to the settlement, the court may order filing under seal for those portions of a settlement agreement as to which good cause is shown for such filing under seal. For purposes of this paragraph, good cause shall exist only if publication of a term or provision of a settlement agreement would cause direct and substantial harm to any party.
- "(6) Restrictions on payment of attorneys' fees and expenses.-Total attorneys' fees and expenses awarded by the court to counsel for the plaintiff class shall not exceed a reasonable percentage of the amount of any damages and prejudgment interest actually paid to the class.
- "(7) Disclosure of settlement terms to class members.-Any proposed or final settlement agreement that is published or otherwise disseminated to the class shall include each of the following statements, along with a cover page summarizing the information contained in such statements:
- "(A) Statement of plaintiff recovery.-The amount of the settlement proposed to be distributed to the parties to the action, determined in the aggregate and on an average per share basis.
 - "(B) Statement of potential outcome of case.-
 - "(i) Agreement on amount of damages.-If the settling parties agree on the av-

H.R. Case 1:07-cw10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 10gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

erage amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this title, a statement concerning the average amount of such potential damages per share.

- "(ii) Disagreement on amount of damages.-If the parties do not agree on the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this title, a statement from each settling party concerning the issue or issues on which the parties disagree.
- *11 "(iii) Inadmissibility for certain purposes.—A statement made in accordance with clause (i) or (ii) concerning the amount of damages shall not be admissible in any Federal or State judicial action or administrative proceeding, other than an action or proceeding arising out of such statement.
- "(C) Statement of attorneys' fees or costs sought.-If any of the settling parties or their counsel intend to apply to the court for an award of attorneys' fees or costs from any fund established as part of the settlement, a statement indicating which parties or counsel intend to make such an application, the amount of fees and costs that will be sought (including the amount of such fees and costs determined on an average per share basis), and a brief explanation supporting the fees and costs sought. Such information shall be clearly summarized on the cover page of any notice to a party of any proposed or final settlement agreement.
- "(D) Identification of lawyers' representatives.-The name, telephone number, and address of one or more representatives of counsel for the plaintiff class who will be reasonably available to answer questions from class members concerning any matter contained in any notice of settlement published or otherwise disseminated to the class.
- "(E) Reasons for settlement.-A brief statement explaining the reasons why the parties are proposing the settlement.
- "(F) Other information.-Such other information as may be required by the court.
- "(8) Security for payment of costs in class actions.—In any private action arising under this title that is certified as a class action pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the court may require an undertaking from the attorneys for the plaintiff class, the plaintiff class, or both, or from the attorneys for the defendant, the defendant, or both, in such proportions and at such times as the court determines are just and equitable, for the payment of fees and expenses that may be awarded under this subsection.
- "(9) Attorney conflict of interest.-If a plaintiff class is represented by an attorney who directly owns or otherwise has a beneficial interest in the securities that are the subject of the litigation, the court shall make a determination of whether such ownership or other interest constitutes a conflict of interest sufficient to disqualify the attorney from representing the plaintiff class.
 - "(b) Requirements for Securities Fraud Actions.-
- "(1) Misleading statements and omissions.-In any private action arising under this title in which the plaintiff alleges that the defendant-
 - "(A) made an untrue statement of a material fact; or
- "(B) omitted to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements made, in the light of the circumstances in which they were made, not mis-

H.R. Case 1:07-cm10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 11gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

leading;

- *12 the complaint shall specify each statement alleged to have been misleading, the reason or reasons why the statement is misleading, and, if an allegation regarding the statement or omission is made on information and belief, the complaint shall state with particularity all facts on which that belief is formed.
- "(2) Required state of mind.—In any private action arising under this title in which the plaintiff may recover money damages only on proof that the defendant acted with a particular state of mind, the complaint shall, with respect to each act or omission alleged to violate this title, state with particularity facts giving rise to a strong inference that the defendant acted with the required state of mind.
 - "(3) Motion to dismiss; stay of discovery.-
- "(A) Dismissal for failure to meet pleading requirements.-In any private action arising under this title, the court shall, on the motion of any defendant, dismiss the complaint if the requirements of paragraphs (1) and (2) are not met.
- "(B) Stay of discovery.-In any private action arising under this title, all discovery and other proceedings shall be stayed during the pendency of any motion to dismiss, unless the court finds upon the motion of any party that particularized discovery is necessary to preserve evidence or to prevent undue prejudice to that party.
 - "(C) Preservation of evidence.-
- "(i) In general.-During the pendency of any stay of discovery pursuant to this paragraph, unless otherwise ordered by the court, any party to the action with actual notice of the allegations contained in the complaint shall treat all documents, data compilations (including electronically recorded or stored data), and tangible objects that are in the custody or control of such person and that are relevant to the allegations, as if they were the subject of a continuing request for production of documents from an opposing party under the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
- "(ii) Sanction for willful violation.-A party aggrieved by the willful failure of an opposing party to comply with clause (i) may apply to the court for an order awarding appropriate sanctions.
- "(4) Loss causation.—In any private action arising under this title, the plaintiff shall have the burden of proving that the act or omission of the defendant alleged to violate this title caused the loss for which the plaintiff seeks to recover damages.
 - "(c) Sanctions for Abusive Litigation.-
- "(1) Mandatory review by court.-In any private action arising under this title, upon final adjudication of the action, the court shall include in the record specific findings regarding compliance by each party and each attorney representing any party with each requirement of <u>Rule 11(b)</u> of the <u>Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u> as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion.
- "(2) Mandatory sanctions.—If the court makes a finding under paragraph (1) that a party or attorney violated any requirement *13 of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion, the court shall impose sanctions on such party or attorney in accordance

H.R. Case 1:07-cw10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 12gef 18

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

with <u>Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u>. Prior to making a finding that any party or attorney has violated <u>Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u>, the court shall give such party or attorney notice and an opportunity to respond.

- "(3) Presumption in favor of attorneys' fees and costs.-
- "(A) In general.-Subject to subparagraphs (B) and (C), for purposes of paragraph (2), the court shall adopt a presumption that the appropriate sanction-
- "(i) for failure of any responsive pleading or dispositive motion to comply with any requirement of $\underline{\text{Rule 11(b)}}$ of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred as a direct result of the violation; and
- "(ii) for substantial failure of any complaint to comply with any requirement of <u>Rule 11(b)</u> of the <u>Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u> is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred in the action.
- "(B) Rebuttal evidence.-The presumption described in subparagraph (A) may be rebutted only upon proof by the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed that-
- "(i) the award of attorneys' fees and other expenses will impose an unreasonable burden on that party or attorney and would be unjust, and the failure to make such an award would not impose a greater burden on the party in whose favor sanctions are to be imposed; or
- "(ii) the violation of $\underline{\text{Rule 11(b)}}$ of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure was de minimis.
- "(C) Sanctions.-If the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed meets its burden under subparagraph (B), the court shall award the sanctions that the court deems appropriate pursuant to Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
- "(d) Defendant's Right to Written Interrogatories.-In any private action arising under this title in which the plaintiff may recover money damages, the court shall, when requested by a defendant, submit to the jury a written interrogatory on the issue of each such defendant's state of mind at the time the alleged violation occurred.
 - "(e) Limitation on Damages .-
- "(1) In general.-Except as provided in paragraph (2), in any private action arising under this title in which the plaintiff seeks to establish damages by reference to the market price of a security, the award of damages to the plaintiff shall not exceed the difference between the purchase or sale price paid or received, as appropriate, by the plaintiff for the subject security *14 and the mean trading price of that security during the 90-day period beginning on the date on which the information correcting the misstatement or omission that is the basis for the action is disseminated to the market.
- "(2) Exception.-In any private action arising under this title in which the plaintiff seeks to establish damages by reference to the market price of a security, if the plaintiff sells or repurchases the subject security prior to the expiration of the 90-day period described in paragraph (1), the plaintiff's damages shall not exceed the difference between the purchase or sale price paid or re-

H.R. Case 1:07-cv10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 13gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

ceived, as appropriate, by the plaintiff for the security and the mean trading price of the security during the period beginning immediately after dissemination of information correcting the misstatement or omission and ending on the date on which the plaintiff sells or repurchases the security.

- "(3) Definition.-For purposes of this subsection, the 'mean trading price' of a security shall be an average of the daily trading price of that security, determined as of the close of the market each day during the 90-day period referred to in paragraph (1).".
- SEC. 102. SAFE HARBOR FOR FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.
- (a) Amendment to the Securities Act of 1933.-Title I of the Securities Act of 1933 ($\underline{15~U.S.C.~77a}$ et seq.) is amended by inserting after section 27 (as added by this Act) the following new section:
- "SEC. 27A. APPLICATION OF SAFE HARBOR FOR FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.
- "(a) Applicability.-This section shall apply only to a forward-looking statement made by-
- "(1) an issuer that, at the time that the statement is made, is subject to the reporting requirements of section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934;
 - "(2) a person acting on behalf of such issuer;
- "(3) an outside reviewer retained by such issuer making a statement on behalf of such issuer; or
- "(4) an underwriter, with respect to information provided by such issuer or information derived from information provided by the issuer.
- "(b) Exclusions.-Except to the extent otherwise specifically provided by rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, this section shall not apply to a forward-looking statement-
- "(1) that is made with respect to the business or operations of the issuer, if
- "(A) during the 3-year period preceding the date on which the statement was first made- $\,$
- "(i) was convicted of any felony or misdemeanor described in clauses (i) through (iv) of section 15(b)(4)(B) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; or
- "(ii) has been made the subject of a judicial or administrative decree or order arising out of a governmental action that-
- "(I) prohibits future violations of the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;
- *15 "(II) requires that the issuer cease and desist from violating the antifraud provisions of the securities laws; or
- "(III) determines that the issuer violated the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;
- "(B) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with an offering of securities by a blank check company;
 - "(C) issues penny stock;

н. R. Case 1:07-см 10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 14-9 f 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

- "(D) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a rollup transaction; or
- "(E) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a going private transaction; or
 - "(2) that is-
- "(A) included in a financial statement prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- "(B) contained in a registration statement of, or otherwise issued by, an investment company;
 - "(C) made in connection with a tender offer;
 - "(D) made in connection with an initial public offering;
- "(E) made in connection with an offering by, or relating to the operations of, a partnership, limited liability company, or a direct participation investment program; or
- "(F) made in a disclosure of beneficial ownership in a report required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
 - "(c) Safe Harbor.-
- "(1) In general.-Except as provided in subsection (b), in any private action arising under this title that is based on an untrue statement of a material fact or omission of a material fact necessary to make the statement not misleading, a person referred to in subsection (a) shall not be liable with respect to any forward-looking statement, whether written or oral, if and to the extent that-
 - "(A) the forward-looking statement is-
- "(i) identified as a forward-looking statement, and is accompanied by meaningful cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those in the forward-looking statement; or
 - "(ii) immaterial; or
 - "(B) the plaintiff fails to prove that the forward-looking statement-
- "(i) if made by a natural person, was made with actual knowledge by that person that the statement was false or misleading; or
 - "(ii) if made by a business entity; was-
 - "(I) made by or with the approval of an executive officer of that entity, and
- "(II) made or approved by such officer with actual knowledge by that officer that the statement was false or misleading.
- "(2) Oral forward-looking statements.—In the case of an oral forward-looking statement made by an issuer that is subject to the reporting requirements of section 13(a) or section *16 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or by a person acting on behalf of such issuer, the requirement set forth in paragraph (1)(A) shall be deemed to be satisfied—
- "(A) if the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by a cautionary statement-
 - "(i) that the particular oral statement is a forward-looking statement; and
- "(ii) that the actual results could differ materially from those projected in the forward-looking statement; and
 - "(B) if-

H.R. Gase 1:07-cv010258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 15gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

- "(i) the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by an oral statement that additional information concerning factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those in the forward-looking statement is contained in a readily available written document, or portion thereof;
- "(ii) the accompanying oral statement referred to in clause (i) identifies the document, or portion thereof, that contains the additional information about those factors relating to the forward-looking statement; and
- "(iii) the information contained in that written document is a cautionary statement that satisfies the standard established in paragraph (1)(A).
- "(3) Availability.-Any document filed with the Commission or generally disseminated shall be deemed to be readily available for purposes of paragraph (2).
- "(4) Effect on other safe harbors.-The exemption provided for in paragraph (1) shall be in addition to any exemption that the Commission may establish by rule or regulation under subsection (g).
- "(d) Duty To Update.-Nothing in this section shall impose upon any person a duty to update a forward-looking statement.
- "(e) Dispositive Motion.-On any motion to dismiss based upon subsection (c)(1), the court shall consider any statement cited in the complaint and cautionary statement accompanying the forward-looking statement, which are not subject to material dispute, cited by the defendant.
- "(f) Stay Pending Decision on Motion.-In any private action arising under this title, the court shall stay discovery (other than discovery that is specifically directed to the applicability of the exemption provided for in this section) during the pendency of any motion by a defendant for summary judgment that is based on the grounds that-
- "(1) the statement or omission upon which the complaint is based is a forward-looking statement within the meaning of this section; and
 - "(2) the exemption provided for in this section precludes a claim for relief.
- "(g) Exemption Authority.—In addition to the exemptions provided for in this section, the Commission may, by rule or regulation, provide exemptions from or under any provision of this title, including with respect to liability that is based on a statement or that is based on projections or other forward-looking information, if *17 and to the extent that any such exemption is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, as determined by the Commission.
- "(h) Effect on Other Authority of Commission.-Nothing in this section limits, either expressly or by implication, the authority of the Commission to exercise similar authority or to adopt similar rules and regulations with respect to forward-looking statements under any other statute under which the Commission exercises rulemaking authority.
- "(i) Definitions.-For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:
 - "(1) Forward-looking statement.-The term 'forward-looking statement' means-
- "(A) a statement containing a projection of revenues, income (including income loss), earnings (including earnings loss) per share, capital expenditures, dividends, capital structure, or other financial items;
 - "(B) a statement of the plans and objectives of management for future opera-

H.R. Case 1:07-cv10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 16gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

tions, including plans or objectives relating to the products or services of the issuer;

- "(C) a statement of future economic performance, including any such statement contained in a discussion and analysis of financial condition by the management or in the results of operations included pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Commission;
- "(D) any statement of the assumptions underlying or relating to any statement described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C);
- "(E) any report issued by an outside reviewer retained by an issuer, to the extent that the report assesses a forward-looking statement made by the issuer; or
- "(F) a statement containing a projection or estimate of such other items as may be specified by rule or regulation of the Commission.
- "(2) Investment company.-The term 'investment company' has the same meaning as in section 3(a) of the Investment Company Act of 1940.
- "(3) Penny stock.-The term 'penny stock' has the same meaning as in section 3(a)(51) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and the rules and regulations, or orders issued pursuant to that section.
- "(4) Going private transaction.-The term 'going private transaction' has the meaning given that term under the rules or regulations of the Commission issued pursuant to section 13(e) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
- "(5) Securities laws.-The term 'securities laws' has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
- "(6) Person acting on behalf of an issuer.-The term 'person acting on behalf of an issuer' means an officer, director, or employee of the issuer.
- "(7) Other terms.-The terms 'blank check company', 'rollup transaction', 'partnership', 'limited liability company', 'executive officer of an entity' and 'direct participation investment program', *18 have the meanings given those terms by rule or regulation of the Commission.".
- (b) Amendment to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.-The Securities Exchange Act of 1934 ($\frac{15 \text{ U.S.C.}}{78a}$ et seq.) is amended by inserting after section 21D (as added by this Act) the following new section:
- "SEC. 21E. APPLICATION OF SAFE HARBOR FOR FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.
- "(a) Applicability.-This section shall apply only to a forward-looking statement made by-
- "(1) an issuer that, at the time that the statement is made, is subject to the reporting requirements of section 13(a) or section 15(d);
 - "(2) a person acting on behalf of such issuer;
- "(3) an outside reviewer retained by such issuer making a statement on behalf of such issuer; or
- "(4) an underwriter, with respect to information provided by such issuer or information derived from information provided by such issuer.
- "(b) Exclusions.-Except to the extent otherwise specifically provided by rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, this section shall not apply to a forward-looking statement-
 - "(1) that is made with respect to the business or operations of the issuer, if

H.R. Case 1:07-cw10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 17gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

the issuer-

- "(A) during the 3-year period preceding the date on which the statement was first made-
- "(i) was convicted of any felony or misdemeanor described in clauses (i) through (iv) of section 15(b)(4)(B); or
- "(ii) has been made the subject of a judicial or administrative decree or order arising out of a governmental action that-
- "(I) prohibits future violations of the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;
- "(II) requires that the issuer cease and desist from violating the antifraud provisions of the securities laws; or
- "(III) determines that the issuer violated the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;
- "(B) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with an offering of securities by a blank check company;
 - "(C) issues penny stock;
- "(D) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a rollup transaction; or
- "(E) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a going private transaction; or
 - "(2) that is-
- "(A) included in a financial statement prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- "(B) contained in a registration statement of, or otherwise issued by, an investment company;
 - "(C) made in connection with a tender offer;
 - "(D) made in connection with an initial public offering;
- *19 "(E) made in connection with an offering by, or relating to the operations of, a partnership, limited liability company, or a direct participation investment program; or
- "(F) made in a disclosure of beneficial ownership in a report required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to section 13(d).
 - "(c) Safe Harbor.-
- "(1) In general.-Except as provided in subsection (b), in any private action arising under this title that is based on an untrue statement of a material fact or omission of a material fact necessary to make the statement not misleading, a person referred to in subsection (a) shall not be liable with respect to any forward-looking statement, whether written or oral, if and to the extent that-
 - "(A) the forward-looking statement is-
- "(i) identified as a forward-looking statement, and is accompanied by meaningful cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those in the forward-looking statement; or
 - "(ii) immaterial; or
 - "(B) the plaintiff fails to prove that the forward-looking statement-
- "(i) if made by a natural person, was made with actual knowledge by that person that the statement was false or misleading; or

H.R. Case 1:07-cv10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 18gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

- "(ii) if made by a business entity; was-
- "(I) made by or with the approval of an executive officer of that entity; and
- "(II) made or approved by such officer with actual knowledge by that officer that the statement was false or misleading.
- "(2) Oral forward-looking statements.—In the case of an oral forward-looking statement made by an issuer that is subject to the reporting requirements of section 13(a) or section 15(d), or by a person acting on behalf of such issuer, the requirement set forth in paragraph (1)(A) shall be deemed to be satisfied-
- "(A) if the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by a cautionary statement-
 - "(i) that the particular oral statement is a forward-looking statement; and
- "(ii) that the actual results might differ materially from those projected in the forward-looking statement; and
 - "(B) if-
- "(i) the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by an oral statement that additional information concerning factors that could cause actual results to materially differ from those in the forward-looking statement is contained in a readily available written document, or portion thereof;
- "(ii) the accompanying oral statement referred to in clause (i) identifies the document, or portion thereof, *20 that contains the additional information about those factors relating to the forward-looking statement; and
- "(iii) the information contained in that written document is a cautionary statement that satisfies the standard established in paragraph (1)(A).
- "(3) Availability.-Any document filed with the Commission or generally disseminated shall be deemed to be readily available for purposes of paragraph (2).
- "(4) Effect on other safe harbors.-The exemption provided for in paragraph (1) shall be in addition to any exemption that the Commission may establish by rule or regulation under subsection (g).
- "(d) Duty To Update.-Nothing in this section shall impose upon any person a duty to update a forward-looking statement.
- "(e) Dispositive Motion.-On any motion to dismiss based upon subsection (c)(1), the court shall consider any statement cited in the complaint and any cautionary statement accompanying the forward-looking statement, which are not subject to material dispute, cited by the defendant.
- "(f) Stay Pending Decision on Motion.-In any private action arising under this title, the court shall stay discovery (other than discovery that is specifically directed to the applicability of the exemption provided for in this section) during the pendency of any motion by a defendant for summary judgment that is based on the grounds that-
- "(1) the statement or omission upon which the complaint is based is a forward-looking statement within the meaning of this section; and
 - "(2) the exemption provided for in this section precludes a claim for relief.
- "(g) Exemption Authority.-In addition to the exemptions provided for in this section, the Commission may, by rule or regulation, provide exemptions from or under any provision of this title, including with respect to liability that is based on a statement or that is based on projections or other forward-looking informa-

H.R. Case 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 12gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

tion, if and to the extent that any such exemption is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, as determined by the Commission.

- "(h) Effect on Other Authority of Commission.-Nothing in this section limits, either expressly or by implication, the authority of the Commission to exercise similar authority or to adopt similar rules and regulations with respect to forward-looking statements under any other statute under which the Commission exercises rulemaking authority.
- "(i) Definitions.-For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:
 - "(1) Forward-looking statement.-The term 'forward-looking statement' means-
- "(A) a statement containing a projection of revenues, income (including income loss), earnings (including earnings loss) per share, capital expenditures, dividends, capital structure, or other financial items;
- *21 "(B) a statement of the plans and objectives of management for future operations, including plans or objectives relating to the products or services of the issuer;
- "(C) a statement of future economic performance, including any such statement contained in a discussion and analysis of financial condition by the management or in the results of operations included pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Commission;
- "(D) any statement of the assumptions underlying or relating to any statement described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C);
- "(E) any report issued by an outside reviewer retained by an issuer, to the extent that the report assesses a forward-looking statement made by the issuer; or
- "(F) a statement containing a projection or estimate of such other items as may be specified by rule or regulation of the Commission.
- "(2) Investment company.-The term 'investment company' has the same meaning as in section 3(a) of the Investment Company Act of 1940.
- "(3) Going private transaction.-The term 'going private transaction' has the meaning given that term under the rules or regulations of the Commission issued pursuant to section 13(e).
- "(4) Person acting on behalf of an issuer.-The term 'person acting on behalf of an issuer' means any officer, director, or employee of such issuer.
- "(5) Other terms.-The terms 'blank check company', 'rollup transaction', 'partnership', 'limited liability company', 'executive officer of an entity' and 'direct participation investment program', have the meanings given those terms by rule or regulation of the Commission.".
- SEC. 103. ELIMINATION OF CERTAIN ABUSIVE PRACTICES.
- (a) Prohibition of Referral Fees.-Section 15(c) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78o(c)) is amended by adding at the end the following new paragraph:
- "(8) Prohibition of referral fees.-No broker or dealer, or person associated with a broker or dealer, may solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, remuneration for assisting an attorney in obtaining the representation of any person in any private action arising under this title or under the Securities Act of 1933.".

H.R. Case 1:07-cy 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 20gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

- (b) Prohibition of Attorneys' Fees Paid From Commission Disgorgement Funds .-
- (1) Securities act of 1933.-Section 20 of the Securities Act of 1933 ($\frac{15}{U.S.C.}$ 77t) is amended by adding at the end the following new subsection:
- "(f) Prohibition of Attorneys' Fees Paid From Commission Disgorgement Funds.-Except as otherwise ordered by the court upon motion by the Commission, or, in the case of an administrative action, as otherwise ordered by the Commission, funds disgorged as the result of an action brought by the Commission in Federal court, or as a result of any Commission administrative action, shall not be distributed as payment for attorneys' fees or expenses *22 incurred by private parties seeking distribution of the disgorged funds.".
- (2) Securities exchange act of 1934.-Section 21(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78u(d)) is amended by adding at the end the following new paragraph:
- "(4) Prohibition of attorneys' fees paid from commission disgorgement funds.-Except as otherwise ordered by the court upon motion by the Commission, or, in the case of an administrative action, as otherwise ordered by the Commission, funds disgorged as the result of an action brought by the Commission in Federal court, or as a result of any Commission administrative action, shall not be distributed as payment for attorneys' fees or expenses incurred by private parties seeking distribution of the disgorged funds.".
- SEC. 104. AUTHORITY OF COMMISSION TO PROSECUTE AIDING AND ABETTING.

Section 20 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (<u>15 U.S.C. 78t</u>) is amended-(1) by striking the section heading and inserting the following:

"LIABILITY OF CONTROLLING PERSONS AND PERSONS WHO AID AND ABET VIOLATIONS";

and

- (2) by adding at the end the following new subsection:
- "(f) Prosecution of Persons Who Aid and Abet Violations.-For purposes of any action brought by the Commission under paragraph (1) or (3) of section 21(d), any person that knowingly provides substantial assistance to another person in violation of a provision of this title, or of any rule or regulation issued under this title, shall be deemed to be in violation of such provision to the same extent as the person to whom such assistance is provided.".

SEC. 105. LOSS CAUSATION.

Section 12 of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 771) is amended-

- (1) by inserting "(a) In General.-" before "Any person";
- (2) by inserting ", subject to subsection (b), " after "shall be liable"; and
- (3) by adding at the end the following:
- "(b) Loss Causation.-In an action described in subsection (a)(2), if the person who offered or sold such security proves that any portion or all of the amount recoverable under subsection (a)(2) represents other than the depreciation in value of the subject security resulting from such part of the prospectus or oral communication, with respect to which the liability of that person is asserted, not

H.R. Coase 1:07-cm 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 21gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

being true or omitting to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statement not misleading, then such portion or amount, as the case may be, shall not be recoverable.".

- *23 SEC. 106. STUDY AND REPORT ON PROTECTIONS FOR SENIOR CITIZENS AND QUALIFIED RETIREMENT PLANS.
- (a) In General.-Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall-
- (1) determine whether investors that are senior citizens or qualified retirement plans require greater protection against securities fraud than is provided in this Act and the amendments made by this Act;
- (2) determine whether investors that are senior citizens or qualified retirement plans have been adversely impacted by abusive or unnecessary securities fraud litigation, and whether the provisions in this Act or amendments made by this Act are sufficient to protect their investments from such litigation; and
- (3) if so, submit to the Congress a report containing recommendations on protections from securities fraud and abusive or unnecessary securities fraud litigation that the Commission determines to be appropriate to thoroughly protect such investors.
 - (b) Definitions.-For purposes of this section-
- (1) the term "qualified retirement plan" has the same meaning as in <u>section</u> 4974(c) of the <u>Internal Revenue Code of 1986</u>; and
- (2) the term "senior citizen" means an individual who is 62 years of age or older as of the date of the securities transaction at issue.
- SEC. 107. AMENDMENT TO RACKETEER INFLUENCED AND CORRUPT ORGANIZATIONS ACT.

Section 1964(c) of title 18, United States Code, is amended by inserting before the period ", except that no person may rely upon any conduct that would have been actionable as fraud in the purchase or sale of securities to establish a violation of section 1962. The exception contained in the preceding sentence does not apply to an action against any person that is criminally convicted in connection with the fraud, in which case the statute of limitations shall start to run on the date on which the conviction becomes final".

SEC. 108. APPLICABILITY.

The amendments made by this title shall not affect or apply to any private action arising under title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or title I of the Securities Act of 1933, commenced before and pending on the date of enactment of this Act.

TITLE II-REDUCTION OF COERCIVE SETTLEMENTS

SEC. 201. PROPORTIONATE LIABILITY.

(a) Amendment to Securities and Exchange Act of 1934.-Section 21D the Securit-

H.R. Case 1:07-cw10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 22gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

ies Exchange Act of 1934 (as added by this Act) is amended by adding at the end the following new subsection:

- "(g) Proportionate Liability.-
- "(1) Applicability.-Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to create, affect, or in any manner modify, the standard *24 for liability associated with any action arising under the securities laws.
 - "(2) Liability for damages.-
- "(A) Joint and several liability.-Any covered person against whom a final judgment is entered in a private action shall be liable for damages jointly and severally only if the trier of fact specifically determines that such covered person knowingly committed a violation of the securities laws.
 - "(B) Proportionate liability.-
- "(i) In general.-Except as provided in paragraph (1), a covered person against whom a final judgment is entered in a private action shall be liable solely for the portion of the judgment that corresponds to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person, as determined under paragraph (3).
- "(ii) Recovery by and costs of covered person.-In any case in which a contractual relationship permits, a covered person that prevails in any private action may recover the attorney's fees and costs of that covered person in connection with the action.
 - "(3) Determination of responsibility.-
- "(A) In general.-In any private action, the court shall instruct the jury to answer special interrogatories, or if there is no jury, shall make findings, with respect to each covered person and each of the other persons claimed by any of the parties to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff, including persons who have entered into settlements with the plaintiff or plaintiffs, concerning-
 - "(i) whether such person violated the securities laws;
- "(ii) the percentage of responsibility of such person, measured as a percentage of the total fault of all persons who caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff; and
- "(iii) whether such person knowingly committed a violation of the securities laws.
- "(B) Contents of special interrogatories or findings.-The responses to interrogatories, or findings, as appropriate, under subparagraph (A) shall specify the total amount of damages that the plaintiff is entitled to recover and the percentage of responsibility of each covered person found to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs.
- "(C) Factors for consideration.-In determining the percentage of responsibility under this paragraph, the trier of fact shall consider-
- "(i) the nature of the conduct of each covered person found to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs; and
- "(ii) the nature and extent of the causal relationship between the conduct of each such person and the damages incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs.
 - *25 "(4) Uncollectible share.-
 - "(A) In general.-Notwithstanding paragraph (2)(B), upon motion made not later

H.R. Gase 1:07-cv010258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 23-0f 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

than 6 months after a final judgment is entered in any private action, the court determines that all or part of the share of the judgment of the covered person is not collectible against that covered person, and is also not collectible against a covered person described in paragraph (2)(A), each covered person described in paragraph (2)(B) shall be liable for the uncollectible share as follows:

- "(i) Percentage of net worth.-Each covered person shall be jointly and severally liable for the uncollectible share if the plaintiff establishes that-
- "(I) the plaintiff is an individual whose recoverable damages under the final judgment are equal to more than 10 percent of the net worth of the plaintiff; and
 - "(II) the net worth of the plaintiff is equal to less than \$200,000.
- "(ii) Other plaintiffs.-With respect to any plaintiff not described in subclauses (I) and (II) of clause (i), each covered person shall be liable for the uncollectible share in proportion to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person, except that the total liability of a covered person under this clause may not exceed 50 percent of the proportionate share of that covered person, as determined under paragraph (3)(B).
- "(iii) Net worth.-For purposes of this subparagraph, net worth shall be determined as of the date immediately preceding the date of the purchase or sale (as applicable) by the plaintiff of the security that is the subject of the action, and shall be equal to the fair market value of assets, minus liabilities, including the net value of the investments of the plaintiff in real and personal property (including personal residences).
- "(B) Overall limit.-In no case shall the total payments required pursuant to subparagraph (A) exceed the amount of the uncollectible share.
- "(C) Covered persons subject to contribution.-A covered person against whom judgment is not collectible shall be subject to contribution and to any continuing liability to the plaintiff on the judgment.
- "(5) Right of contribution.-To the extent that a covered person is required to make an additional payment pursuant to paragraph (4), that covered person may recover contribution-
 - "(A) from the covered person originally liable to make the payment;
- "(B) from any covered person liable jointly and severally pursuant to paragraph (2)(A);
- "(C) from any covered person held proportionately liable pursuant to this paragraph who is liable to make the same payment and has paid less than his or her proportionate share of that payment; or
- *26 "(D) from any other person responsible for the conduct giving rise to the payment that would have been liable to make the same payment.
- "(6) Nondisclosure to jury.-The standard for allocation of damages under paragraphs (2) and (3) and the procedure for reallocation of uncollectible shares under paragraph (4) shall not be disclosed to members of the jury.
 - "(7) Settlement discharge.-
- "(A) In general.—A covered person who settles any private action at any time before final verdict or judgment shall be discharged from all claims for contribution brought by other persons. Upon entry of the settlement by the court, the court shall enter a bar order constituting the final discharge of all obligations

H.R. Case 1:07-cm10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 34gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

to the plaintiff of the settling covered person arising out of the action. The order shall bar all future claims for contribution arising out of the action-

- "(i) by any person against the settling covered person; and
- "(ii) by the settling covered person against any person, other than a person whose liability has been extinguished by the settlement of the settling covered person.
- "(B) Reduction.-If a covered person enters into a settlement with the plaintiff prior to final verdict or judgment, the verdict or judgment shall be reduced by the greater of-
- "(i) an amount that corresponds to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person; or
 - "(ii) the amount paid to the plaintiff by that covered person.
- "(8) Contribution.-A covered person who becomes jointly and severally liable for damages in any private action may recover contribution from any other person who, if joined in the original action, would have been liable for the same damages. A claim for contribution shall be determined based on the percentage of responsibility of the claimant and of each person against whom a claim for contribution is made.
- "(9) Statute of limitations for contribution.—In any private action determining liability, an action for contribution shall be brought not later than 6 months after the entry of a final, nonappealable judgment in the action, except that an action for contribution brought by a covered person who was required to make an additional payment pursuant to paragraph (4) may be brought not later than 6 months after the date on which such payment was made.
 - "(10) Definitions.-For purposes of this subsection-
 - "(A) a covered person 'knowingly commits a violation of the securities laws'-
- "(i) with respect to an action that is based on an untrue statement of material fact or omission of a material fact necessary to make the statement not misleading, if-
- "(I) that covered person makes an untrue statement of a material fact, with actual knowledge that the representation is false, or omits to state a *27 fact necessary in order to make the statement made not misleading, with actual knowledge that, as a result of the omission, one of the material representations of the covered person is false; and
- "(II) persons are likely to reasonably rely on that misrepresentation or omission; and
- "(ii) with respect to an action that is based on any conduct that is not described in clause (i), if that covered person engages in that conduct with actual knowledge of the facts and circumstances that make the conduct of that covered person a violation of the securities laws;
- "(B) reckless conduct by a covered person shall not be construed to constitute a knowing commission of a violation of the securities laws by that covered person;
 - "(C) the term 'covered person' means-
 - "(i) a defendant in any private action arising under this title; or
- "(ii) a defendant in any private action arising under section 11 of the Securities Act of 1933, who is an outside director of the issuer of the securities

H.R. Coase 1:07-cm 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 25-gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

that are the subject of the action; and

- "(D) the term 'outside director' shall have the meaning given such term by rule or regulation of the Commission.".
- (b) Amendments to the Securities Act of 1933.-Section 11(f) of the Securities Act of 1933 (12 U.S.C. 77k(f)) is amended-
- (1) by striking "All" and inserting "(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2), all"; and
 - (2) by adding at the end the following new paragraph:
- "(2)(A) The liability of an outside director under subsection (e) shall be determined in accordance with section 38 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
- "(B) For purposes of this paragraph, the term 'outside director' shall have the meaning given such term by rule or regulation of the Commission .".

SEC. 202. APPLICABILITY.

The amendments made by this title shall not affect or apply to any private action arising under the securities laws commenced before and pending on the date of enactment of this Act.

SEC. 203. RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.

Nothing in this Act or the amendments made by this Act shall be deemed to create or ratify any implied private right of action, or to prevent the Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

*28 TITLE III-AUDITOR DISCLOSURE OF CORPORATE FRAUD

SEC. 301. FRAUD DETECTION AND DISCLOSURE.

(a) In General.-The Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (<u>15 U.S.C. 78a</u> et seq.) is amended by inserting immediately after section 10 the following new section:

"SEC. 10A. AUDIT REQUIREMENTS.

- "(a) In General.-Each audit required pursuant to this title of the financial statements of an issuer by an independent public accountant shall include, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission-
- "(1) procedures designed to provide reasonable assurance of detecting illegal acts that would have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts;
- "(2) procedures designed to identify related party transactions that are material to the financial statements or otherwise require disclosure therein; and
- "(3) an evaluation of whether there is substantial doubt about the ability of the issuer to continue as a going concern during the ensuing fiscal year.
 - "(b) Required Response To Audit Discoveries.-
 - "(1) Investigation and report to management.-If, in the course of conducting

H.R. Case 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 26-9f 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

an audit pursuant to this title to which subsection (a) applies, the independent public accountant detects or otherwise becomes aware of information indicating that an illegal act (whether or not perceived to have a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer) has or may have occurred, the accountant shall, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission-

- "(A)(i) determine whether it is likely that an illegal act has occurred; and
 "(ii) if so, determine and consider the possible effect of the illegal act on
 the financial statements of the issuer, including any contingent monetary effects,
 such as fines, penalties, and damages; and
- "(B) as soon as practicable, inform the appropriate level of the management of the issuer and assure that the audit committee of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of such a committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of such accountant in the course of the audit, unless the illegal act is clearly inconsequential.
- "(2) Response to failure to take remedial action.-If, after determining that the audit committee of the board of directors of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of an audit committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of the accountant in the course of the *29 audit of such accountant, the independent public accountant concludes that-
- "(A) the illegal act has a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer;
- "(B) the senior management has not taken, and the board of directors has not caused senior management to take, timely and appropriate remedial actions with respect to the illegal act; and
- "(C) the failure to take remedial action is reasonably expected to warrant departure from a standard report of the auditor, when made, or warrant resignation from the audit engagement;

the independent public accountant shall, as soon as practicable, directly report its conclusions to the board of directors.

- "(3) Notice to commission; response to failure to notify.—An issuer whose board of directors receives a report under paragraph (2) shall inform the Commission by notice not later than 1 business day after the receipt of such report and shall furnish the independent public accountant making such report with a copy of the notice furnished to the Commission. If the independent public accountant fails to receive a copy of the notice before the expiration of the required 1-business-day period, the independent public accountant shall—
 - "(A) resign from the engagement; or
- "(B) furnish to the Commission a copy of its report (or the documentation of any oral report given) not later than 1 business day following such failure to receive notice.
- "(4) Report after resignation.-If an independent public accountant resigns from an engagement under paragraph (3)(A), the accountant shall, not later than 1 business day following the failure by the issuer to notify the Commission under

н. R. . Coase 1:07-см10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 27gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

paragraph (3), furnish to the Commission a copy of the accountant's report (or the documentation of any oral report given).

- "(c) Auditor Liability Limitation.-No independent public accountant shall be liable in a private action for any finding, conclusion, or statement expressed in a report made pursuant to paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b), including any rule promulgated pursuant thereto.
- "(d) Civil Penalties in Cease-and-Desist Proceedings.-If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing in a proceeding instituted pursuant to section 21C, that an independent public accountant has willfully violated paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b), the Commission may, in addition to entering an order under section 21C, impose a civil penalty against the independent public accountant and any other person that the Commission finds was a cause of such violation. The determination to impose a civil penalty and the amount of the penalty shall be governed by the standards set forth in section 21B.
- "(e) Preservation of Existing Authority.-Except as provided in subsection (d), nothing in this section shall be held to limit or otherwise affect the authority of the Commission under this title.
- "(f) Definition.-As used in this section, the term 'illegal act' means an act or omission that violates any law, or any rule or regulation having the force of law.".
- *30 (b) Effective Dates.-The amendment made by subsection (a) shall apply to each annual report-
- (1) for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1996, with respect to any registrant that is required to file selected quarterly financial data pursuant to the rules or regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission; and
- (2) for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1997, with respect to any other registrant.

And the Senate agree to the same.

That the House recede from its disagreement to the amendment of the Senate to the title of the bill, and agree to the same.

From the Committee on Commerce, for consideration of the House bill, and the Senate amendment, and modifications committed to conference:

Thomas Bliley,

Billy Tauzin,

Jack Fields,

Chris Cox,

Richard F. White,

Anna G. Eshoo,

As additional conferees from the Committee on the Judiciary, for consideration of the House bill, and the Senate amendment, and modifications committed to conference:

н. R. coase 1:07-см10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 28-9f 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

Bill McCollum,

Managers on the Part of the House.

Alfonse D'Amato,

Phil Gramm,

Robert F. Bennett,

Rod Grams,

Pete V. Domenici,

Christopher Dodd,

John F. Kerry,

Managers on the Part of the Senate.

*31 JOINT EXPLANATORY STATEMENT OF THE COMMITTEE OF CONFERENCE

The managers on the part of the House and the Senate at the conference on the disagreeing votes of the two Houses on the amendments of the Senate to the bill (H.R. 1058) to reform Federal securities litigation, and for other purposes, submit the following joint statement to the House and the Senate in explanation of the effect of the action agreed upon by the managers and recommended in the accompanying conference report:

STATEMENT OF MANAGERS-THE "PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION REFORM ACT OF 1995"

The overriding purpose of our Nation's securities laws is to protect investors and to maintain confidence in the securities markets, so that our national savings, capital formation and investment may grow for the benefit of all Americans.

The private securities litigation system is too important to the integrity of American capital markets to allow this system to be undermined by those who seek to line their own pockets by bringing abusive and meritless suits. Private securities litigation is an indispensable tool with which defrauded investors can recover their losses without having to rely upon government action. Such private lawsuits promote public and global confidence in our capital markets and help to deter wrongdoing and to guarantee that corporate officers, auditors, directors, lawyers and others properly perform their jobs. This legislation seeks to return the securities litigation system to that high standard.

Congress has been prompted by significant evidence of abuse in private securities lawsuits to enact reforms to protect investors and maintain confidence in our capital markets. The House and Senate Committees heard evidence that abusive practices committed in private securities litigation include: (1) the routine filing of lawsuits against issuers of securities and others whenever there is a signific-

H.R. Case 1:07-cm10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 29gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

ant change in an issuer's stock price, without regard to any underlying culpability of the issuer, and with only faint hope that the discovery process might lead eventually to some plausible cause of action; (2) the targeting of deep pocket defendants, including accountants, underwriters, and individuals who may be covered by insurance, without regard to their actual culpability; (3) the abuse of the discovery process to impose costs so burdensome that it is often economical for the victimized party to settle; and (4) the manipulation by class action lawyers of the clients whom they purportedly represent. These serious injuries to innocent parties are compounded by the reluctance of many judges to impose sanctions under Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 11, except in those cases involving truly outrageous misconduct. At the same time, the investing public and the entire U.S. economy have been injured by the **731 *32 unwillingness of the best qualified persons to serve on boards of directors and of issuers to discuss publicly their future prospects, because of fear of baseless and extortionate securities lawsuits

In these and other examples of abusive and manipulative securities litigation, innocent parties are often forced to pay exorbitant "settlements." When an insurer must pay lawyers' fees, make settlement payments, and expend management and employee resources in defending a meritless suit, the issuers' own investors suffer. Investors always are the ultimate losers when extortionate "settlements" are extracted from issuers.

This Conference Report seeks to protect investors, issuers, and all who are associated with our capital markets from abusive securities litigation. This legislation implements needed procedural protections to discourage frivolous litigation. It protects outside directors, and others who may be sued for non-knowing securities law violations, from liability for damage actually caused by others. It reforms discovery rules to minimize costs incurred during the pendency of a motion to dismiss or a motion for summary judgment. It protects investors who join class actions against lawyer-driven lawsuits by giving control of the litigation to lead plaintiffs with substantial holdings of the securities of the issuer. It gives victims of abusive securities lawsuits the opportunity to recover their attorneys' fees at the conclusion of an action. And it establishes a safe harbor for forward looking statements, to encourage issuers to disseminate relevant information to the market without fear of open-ended liability.

PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION REFORM

Section 101 contains provisions to reform abusive securities class action litigation. It amends the Securities Act of 1933 (the "1933 Act") by adding a new section 27 and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the "1934 Act") by adding a new section 21D. These provisions are intended to encourage the most capable representatives of the plaintiff class to participate in class action litigation and to exercise supervision and control of the lawyers for the class. These provisions are intended to increase the likelihood that parties with significant holdings in issuers, whose interests are more strongly aligned with the class of shareholders, will participate in the litigation and exercise control over the selection and actions of plaintiff's counsel. The legislation also provides that all discovery is

н. R. Coase 1:07-суд 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 30gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

stayed during the pendency of any motion to dismiss or for summary judgment. These stay of discovery provisions are intended to prevent unnecessary imposition of discovery costs on defendants.

THE PROFESSIONAL PLAINTIFF AND LEAD PLAINTIFF PROBLEMS

House and Senate Committee hearings on securities litigation reform demonstrated the need to reform abuses involving the use of "professional plaintiffs" and the race to the courthouse to file the complaint.

Professional plaintiffs who own a nominal number of shares in a wide array of public companies permit lawyers readily to file abusive securities class action lawsuits. Floor debate in the Senate highlighted that many of the "world's unluckiest investors" repeatedly *33 **732 appear as lead plaintiffs in securities class action lawsuits. These lead plaintiffs often receive compensation in the form of bounty payments or bonuses.

The Conference Committee believes these practices have encouraged the filing of abusive cases. Lead plaintiffs are not entitled to a bounty for their services. Individuals who are motivated by the payment of a bounty or bonus should not be permitted to serve as lead plaintiffs. These individuals do not adequately represent other shareholders-in many cases the "lead plaintiff" has not even read the complaint.

The Conference Committee believes that several new rules will effectively discourage the use of professional plaintiffs.

Plaintiff certification of the complaint

This legislation requires, in new section 27(a)(2) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(a)(2) of the 1934 Act, that the lead plaintiff file a sworn certified statement with the complaint. The statement must certify that the plaintiff: (a) reviewed and authorized the filing of the complaint; (b) did not purchase the securities at the direction of counsel or in order to participate in a lawsuit; and (c) is willing to serve as the lead plaintiff on behalf of the class. To further deter the use of professional plaintiffs, the plaintiff must also identify any transactions in the securities covered by the class period, and any other lawsuits in which the plaintiff has sought to serve as lead plaintiff in the last three years. [FN1]

Method for determining the "most adequate plaintiff"

The Conference Committee was also troubled by the plaintiffs' lawyers "race to the courthouse" to be the first to file a securities class action complaint. This race has caused plaintiffs' attorneys to become fleet of foot and sleight of hand. Most often speed has replaced diligence in drafting complaints. The Conference Committee believes two incentives have driven plaintiffs' lawyers to be the first to file. First, courts traditionally appoint counsel in class action lawsuits on a "first come, first serve" basis. Courts often afford insufficient consideration to the most thoroughly researched, but later filed, complaint. The second incentive involves the court's decision as to who will become lead plaintiff. Generally, the

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

first lawsuit filed also determines the lead plaintiff.

The Conference Committee believes that the selection of the lead plaintiff and lead counsel should rest on considerations other than how quickly a plaintiff has filed its complaint. As a result, this legislation establishes new procedures for the appointment of the lead plaintiff and lead counsel in securities class actions in new section 27(a)(3) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(a)(3) of the 1934 Act.

A plaintiff filing a securities class action must, within 20 days of filing a complaint, provide notice to members of the purported class in a widely circulated business publication. This notice must identify the claims alleged in the lawsuit and the purported class period and inform potential class members that, within 60 days, they may move to serve as the lead plaintiff. Members of the purported *34 **733 class who seek to serve as lead plaintiff do not have to file the certification filing as part of this motion. "Publication" includes a variety of media, including wire, electronic or computer services. [FN2]

Within 90 days of the published notice, the court must consider motions made under this section and appoint the lead plaintiff. If a motion has been filed to consolidate multiple class actions brought on behalf of the same class, the court will not appoint a lead plaintiff until after consideration of the motion.

The current system often works to prevent institutional investors from selecting counsel or serving as lead plaintiff in class actions. [FN3] The Conference Committee seeks to increase the likelihood that institutional investors will serve as lead plaintiffs by requiring courts to presume that the member of the purported class with the largest financial stake in the relief sought is the "most adequate plaintiff."

The Conference Committee believes that increasing the role of institutional investors in class actions will ultimately benefit shareholders and assist courts by improving the quality of representation in securities class actions. Institutional investors are America's largest shareholders, with about \$9.5 trillion in assets, accounting for 51% of the equity market. According to one representative of institutional investors: "As the largest shareholders in most companies, we are the ones who have the most to gain from meritorious securities litigation." [FN4]

Several Senators expressed concern during floor consideration of this legislation that preference would be given to large investors, and that large investors might conspire with the defendant company's management. The Conference Committee believes, however, that with pension funds accounting for \$4.5 trillion [FN5] or nearly half of the institutional assets, in many cases the beneficiaries of pension funds-small investors-ultimately have the greatest stake in the outcome of the lawsuit. Cumulatively, these small investors represent a single large investor interest. Institutional investors and other class members with large amounts at stake will represent the interests of the plaintiff class more effectively than class members with small amounts at stake. The claims of both types of class members generally will be typical.

The Conference Committee recognizes the potential conflicts that could be caused by the shareholder with the "largest financial stake" serving as lead plaintiff. As a result, this presumption may be rebutted by evidence that the plaintiff would not fairly and adequately represent the interests of the class or is subject to

н. R. . cGase 1:07-см 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 32-gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

unique defenses. Members of the purported class may seek discovery on whether the presumptively most adequate plaintiff would not adequately represent the class. The provisions of the bill relating to the appointment of a lead plaintiff are not intended to affect current law with regard to challenges to the adequacy of the class representative or typicality of the claims among the class.

Although the most adequate plaintiff provision does not confer any new fiduciary duty on institutional investors—and the courts should not impose such a duty—the Conference Committee nevertheless intends that the lead plaintiff provision will encourage institutional investors to take a more active role in securities class action lawsuits. Scholars predict that increasing the role of institutional *35 **734 investors will benefit both injured shareholders and courts: "Institutions with large stakes in class actions have much the same interests as the plaintiff class generally; thus, courts could be more confident settlements negotiated under the supervision of institutional plaintiffs were 'fair and reasonable' than is the case with settlements negotiated by unsupervised plaintiffs' attorneys." [FN6]

Finally, this lead plaintiff provision solves the dilemma of who will serve as class counsel. Subject to court approval, the most adequate plaintiff retains class counsel. As a result, the Conference Committee expects that the plaintiff will choose counsel rather than, as is true today, counsel choosing the plaintiff. The Conference Committee does not intend to disturb the court's discretion under existing law to approve or disapprove the lead plaintiff's choice of counsel when necessary to protect the interests of the plaintiff class.

The Conference Report seeks to restrict professional plaintiffs from serving as lead plaintiff by limiting a person from serving in that capacity more than five times in three years. Institutional investors seeking to serve as lead plaintiff may need to exceed this limitation and do not represent the type of professional plaintiff this legislation seeks to restrict. As a result, the Conference Committee grants courts discretion to avoid the unintended consequence of disqualifying institutional investors from serving more than five times in three years. The Conference Committee does not intend for this provision to operate at cross purposes with the "most adequate plaintiff" provision. The Conference Committee does expect, however, that it will be used with vigor to limit the activities of professional plaintiffs.

Limitation on lead plaintiff's recovery

This legislation also removes the financial incentive for becoming a lead plaintiff. New section 27(a)(4) of the 1933 Act and section 21D(a)(4) of the 1934 Act limits the class representative's recovery to his or her pro rata share of the settlement or final judgment. The lead plaintiff's share of the final judgment or settlement will be calculated in the same manner as the shares of the other class members. The Conference Committee recognizes that lead plaintiffs should be reimbursed for reasonable costs and expenses associated with service as lead plaintiff, including lost wages, and grants the courts discretion to award fees accordingly.

IMPROVEMENTS TO THE SETTLEMENT PROCESS

н. R. . Coase 1:07-см 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 33-gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

Restriction on sealed settlement agreements

New section 27(a)(5) of the 1933 Act and section 21D(a)(5) of the 1934 Act generally bar the filing of settlement agreements under seal. The Conference Committee recognizes that legitimate reasons may exist for the court to permit the entry of a settlement or portions of a settlement under seal. A party must show "good cause," i.e., that the publication of a portion or portions of the settlement agreement would result in direct and substantial harm to any party, whether or not a party to the action. The Conference Committee intends "direct and substantial harm" to include proof of reputational injury to a party.

**735 *36 Limitation on attorney's fees

The House and Senate heard testimony that counsel in securities class actions often receive a disproportionate share of settlement awards.

Under current practice, courts generally award attorney's fees based on the so-called "lodestar" approach-i.e., the court multiplies the attorney's hours by a reasonable hourly fee, which may be increased by an additional amount based on risk or other relevant factors. [FN7] Under this approach, attorney's fees can constitute 35% or more of the entire settlement awarded to the class. The Conference Committee limits the award of attorney's fees and costs to counsel for a class in new section 27(a)(6) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(a)(6) of the 1934 Act to a reasonable percentage of the amount of recovery awarded to the class. By not fixing the percentage of fees and costs counsel may receive, the Conference Committee intends to give the court flexibility in determining what is reasonable on a case-by-case basis. The Conference Committee does not intend to prohibit use of the lodestar approach as a means of calculating attorney's fees. The provision focuses on the final amount of fees awarded, not the means by which such fees are calculated.

Improved settlement notice to class members

The House and Senate heard testimony that class members frequently lack meaning-ful information about the terms of the proposed settlement. [FN8] Class members often receive insufficient notice of the terms of a proposed settlement and, thus, have no basis to evaluate the settlement. As one bar association advised the Senate Securities Subcommittee, "settlement notices provided to class members are often obtuse and confusing, and should be written in plain English." [FN9] The Senate received similar testimony from a class member in two separate securities fraud lawsuits: "Nowhere in the settlement notices were the stockholders told of how much they could expect to recover of their losses. . . . I feel that the settlement offer should have told the stockholders how little of their losses will be recovered in the settlement, and that this is a material fact to the shareholder's decision to approve or disapprove the settlement." [FN10]

In new section 27(a)(7) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(a)(7) of the 1934 Act, the Conference Committee requires that certain information be included in any proposed or final settlement agreement disseminated to class members. To ensure

н. R. . Coase 1:07-см 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 34gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

that critical information is readily available to class members, the Conference Committee requires that such information appear in summary form on the cover page of the notice. The notice must contain a statement of the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the settling parties can agree on a figure, or a statement from each settling party on why there is disagreement. It must also explain the attorney's fees and costs sought. The name, telephone number and address of counsel for the class must be provided. Most importantly, the notice must include a brief statement explaining the reason for the proposed settlement.

**736 *37 MAJOR SECURITIES CLASS ACTION ABUSES

Limits on abusive discovery to prevent "fishing expedition" lawsuits

The cost of discovery often forces innocent parties to settle frivolous securities class actions. According to the general counsel of an investment bank, "discovery costs account for roughly 80% of total litigation costs in securities fraud cases." [FN11] In addition, the threat that the time of key employees will be spent responding to discovery requests, including providing deposition testimony, often forces coercive settlements.

The House and Senate heard testimony that discovery in securities class actions often resembles a fishing expedition. As one witness noted, "once the suit is filed, the plaintiff's law firm proceeds to search through all of the company's documents and take endless depositions for the slightest positive comment which they can claim induced the plaintiff to invest and any shred of evidence that the company knew a downturn was coming." [FN12]

The Conference Committee provides in new section 27(b) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(b)(3) of the 1934 Act that courts must stay all discovery pending a ruling on a motion to dismiss, unless exceptional circumstances exist where particularized discovery is necessary to preserve evidence or to prevent undue prejudice to a party. For example, the terminal illness of an important witness might require the deposition of the witness prior to the ruling on the motion to dismiss.

To ensure that relevant evidence will not be lost, new section 27(b) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(b)(3) of the 1934 Act make it unlawful for any person, upon receiving actual notice that names that person as a defendant, willfully to destroy or otherwise alter relevant evidence. The Conference Committee intends this provision to prohibit only the willful alteration or destruction of evidence relevant to the litigation. The provision does not impose liability where parties inadvertently or unintentionally destroy what turn out later to be relevant documents. Although this prohibition expressly applies only to defendants, the Conference Committee believes that the willful destruction of evidence by a plaintiff would be equally improper, and that courts have ample authority to prevent such conduct or to apply sanctions as appropriate.

"Fair share" rule of proportionate liability

н. R. Case 1:07-суд 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 35-gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

One of the most manifestly unfair aspects of the current system of securities litigation is its imposition of liability on one party for injury actually caused by another. Under current law, a single defendant who has been found to be 1% liable may be forced to pay 100% of the damages in the case. The Conference Committee remedies this injustice by providing a "fair share" system of proportionate liability. As former SEC Chairman Richard Breeden testified, under the current regime of joint and several liability, "parties who are central to perpetrating a fraud often pay little, if anything. At the same time, those whose involvement might be only peripheral and lacked any deliberate and knowing participation in the fraud often pay the most in damages." [FN13]

The current system of joint and several liability creates coercive pressure for entirely innocent parties to settle meritless claims **737 *38 rather than risk exposing themselves to liability for a grossly disproportionate share of the damages in the case.

In many cases, exposure to this kind of unlimited and unfair risk has made it impossible for firms to attract qualified persons to serve as outside directors. Both the House and Senate Committees repeatedly heard testimony concerning the chilling effect of unlimited exposure to meritless securities litigation on the willingness of capable people to serve on company boards. SEC Chairman Levitt himself testified that "there [were] the dozen or so entrepreneurial firms whose invitations [to be an outside director] I turned down because they could not adequately insure their directors . . . [C]ountless colleagues in business have had the same experience, and the fact that so many qualified people have been unable to serve is, to me, one of the most lamentable problems of all." [FN14] This result has injured the entire U.S. economy.

Accordingly, the Conference Committee has reformed the traditional rule of joint and several liability. The Conference Report specifically applies this reform to the liability of outside directors under Section 11 of the 1933 Act, [FN15] because the current imposition of joint and several liability for non-knowing Section 11 violations by outside directors presents a particularly glaring example of unfairness. By relieving outside directors of the specter of joint and several liability under Section 11 for non-knowing conduct, Section 201 of the Conference Report will reduce the pressure placed by meritless litigation on the willingness of capable outsiders to serve on corporate boards.

In addition, Section 201 will provide the same "fair share" rule of liability, rather than joint and several liability, for all 1934 Act cases in which liability can be predicated on non-knowing conduct. [FN16]

In applying the "fair share" rule of proportionate liability to cases involving non-knowing securities violations, the Conference Committee explicitly determined that the legislation should make no change to the state of mind requirements of existing law. Accordingly, the definition of "knowing" conduct in the Conference Report is written to conform to existing statutory standards, and Section 201 of the Conference Report makes clear that the "fair share" rule of proportionate liability does not create any new cause of action or expand, diminish, or otherwise affect the substantive standard for liability in any action under the 1933 Act or the 1934 Act. This section of the Conference Report further provides that the

н. R. Coase 1:07-суд 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 36gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

standard of liability in any such action should be determined by the pre-existing, unamended statutory provision that creates the cause of action, without regard to this provision, which applies solely to the allocation of damages.

The Conference Report imposes full joint and several liability, as under current law, on defendants who engage in knowing violations of the securities laws. Defendants who are found liable but have not engaged in knowing violations are responsible only for their share of the judgment (based upon the fact finder's apportionment of responsibility), with two key exceptions. First, all defendants are jointly and severally liable with respect to the claims of certain plaintiffs. Such plaintiffs are defined in the Conference Report as those who establish that (i) they are entitled to damages **738 *39 exceeding 10% of their net worth, and (ii) their net worth is less than \$200,000. The \$200,000 net worth test does not reflect a judgment by the Conference Committee that investors who fall below this standard are "small," unsophisticated, or in need of or entitled to any special protection under the securities laws. Second, if a defendant cannot pay their allocable share of the damages due to insolvency, each of the other defendants must make an additional payment-up to 50% of their own liability-to make up the shortfall in the plaintiff's recovery.

The Conference Committee recognizes that private parties may wish to allocate attorney's fees and costs according to a formula negotiated previously by contract. Accordingly, the Conference Report provides that where authorized by contract a prevailing defendant may recover attorney's fees and costs. The Conference Report does not change the enforceability of indemnification contracts in the event of settlement.

Attorneys' fees awarded to prevailing parties in abusive litigation

The Conference Committee recognizes the need to reduce significantly the filing of meritless securities lawsuits without hindering the ability of victims of fraud to pursue legitimate claims. The Conference Committee seeks to solve this problem by strengthening the application of <u>Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u> in private securities actions.

Existing Rule 11 has not deterred abusive securities litigation. [FN17] Courts often fail to impose Rule 11 sanctions even where such sanctions are warranted. When sanctions are awarded, they are generally insufficient to make whole the victim of a Rule 11 violation: the amount of the sanction is limited to an amount that the court deems sufficient to deter repetition of the sanctioned conduct, rather than imposing a sanction that equals the costs imposed on the victim by the violation. Finally, courts have been unable to apply Rule 11 to the complaint in such a way that the victim of the ensuing lawsuit is compensated for all attorneys' fees and costs incurred in the entire action.

The legislation gives teeth to <u>Rule 11</u> in new section 27(c) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(c) of the 1934 Act by requiring the court to include in the record specific findings, at the conclusion of the action, as to whether all parties and all attorneys have complied with each requirement of <u>Rule 11(b)</u> of the <u>Federal Rules of Civil Procedure</u>.

These provisions also establish the presumption that the appropriate sanction

н. R. Case 1:07-суд 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 37-gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

for filing a complaint that violates <u>Rule 11(b)</u> is an award to the prevailing party of all attorney's fees and costs incurred in the entire action. The Conference Report provides that, if the action is brought for an improper purpose, is unwarranted by existing law or legally frivolous, is not supported by facts, or otherwise fails to satisfy the requirements set forth in <u>Rule 11(b)</u>, the prevailing party presumptively will be awarded its attorneys' fees and costs for the entire action. This provision does not mean that a party who is sanctioned for only a partial failure of the complaint under <u>Rule 11</u>, such as one count out of a 20-count complaint, must pay for all of the attorney's fees and costs associated with the action. The Conference Committee expects that courts will **739 *40 grant relief from the presumption where a de minimis violation of the Rule has occurred. Accordingly, the Conference Committee specifies that the failure of the complaint must be "substantial" and makes the presumption rebuttable.

For $\underline{\text{Rule }11(b)}$ violations involving responsive pleadings or dispositive motions, the rebuttable presumption is an award of attorneys' fees and costs incurred by the victim of the violation as a result of that particular pleading or motion.

A party may rebut the presumption of sanctions by providing that: (i) the violation was de minimis; or (ii) the imposition of fees and costs would impose an undue burden and be unjust, and it would not impose a greater burden for the prevailing party to have to pay those same fees and costs. The premise of this test is that, when an abusive or frivolous action is maintained, it is manifestly unjust for the victim of the violation to bear substantial attorneys' fees. The Conference Committee recognizes that little in the way of justice can be achieved by attempting to compensate the prevailing party for lost time and such other measures of damages as injury to reputation; hence it has written into law the presumption that a prevailing party should not have the cost of attorney's fees added as insult to the underlying injury. If a party successfully rebuts the presumption, the court then impose sanctions consistent with Rule 11(c)(2). [FN18] The Conference Committee intends this provision to impose upon courts the affirmative duty to scrutinize filings closely and to sanction attorneys or parties whenever their conduct violates Rule 11(b).

Limitation on attorney's conflict of interest

The Conference Committee believes that, in the context of class action lawsuits, it is a conflict of interest for a class action lawyer to benefit from the outcome of the case where the lawyer owns stock in the company being sued. Accordingly, new section 27(a)(8) of the 1933 Act and new section 21D(a)(9) requires the court to determine whether a lawyer who owns securities in the defendant company and who seeks to represent the plaintiff class in a securities class action should be disqualified from representing the class.

Bonding for payment of fees and expenses

The house hearings on securities litigation reform revealed the need for explicit authority for courts to require undertakings for attorney's fees and costs from parties, or their counsel, or both, in order to ensure the viability of po-

н. R. Case 1:07-суд 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 38-gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

tential sanctions as a deterrent to meritless litigation. [FN19] Congress long ago authorized similar undertakings in the express private right of action in Section 11 of the 1933 Act and in Sections 9 and 18 of the 1934 Act. The availability of such undertakings in private securities actions will be an important means of ensuring that the provision of the Conference Report authorizing the award of attorneys' fees and costs under Rule 11 will not become, in practice, a one-way mechanism only usable to sanction parties with deep pockets. [FN20]

The legislation expressly provides that such undertakings may be required of parties' attorneys in lieu of, or in addition to, the parties themselves. In this regard, the Conference Committee intends to preempt any contrary state bar restrictions that much inhibit *41 **740 attorneys' provision of such undertakings in behalf of their clients. The Conference Committee anticipates, for example, that where a judge determines to require an undertaking in a class action, such an undertaking would ordinarily be imposed on plaintiffs' counsel rather than upon the plaintiff class, both because the financial resources of counsel would ordinarily be more extensive than those of an individual class member and because counsel are better situated than class members to evaluate the merits of cases and individual motions. This provision is intended to effectuate the remedial purposes of the bill's Rule 11 provision.

REQUIREMENTS FOR SECURITIES FRAUD ACTIONS

Heightened pleading standard

Naming a party in a civil suit for fraud is a serious matter. Unwarranted fraud claims can lead to serious injury to reputation for which our legal system effectively offers no redress. For this reason, among others, Rule 9(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure requires that plaintiffs plead allegations of fraud with "particularity." The Rule has not prevented abuse of the securities laws by private litigants. [FN21] Moreover, the courts of appeals have interpreted Rule 9(b)'s requirement in conflicting ways, creating distinctly different standards among the circuits. [FN22] The House and Senate hearings on securities litigation reform included testimony on the need to establish uniform and more stringent pleading requirements to curtail the filing of meritless lawsuits.

The Conference Committee language is based in part on the pleading standard of the Second Circuit. The standard also is specifically written to conform the language to $\underline{\text{Rule 9(b)}}$'s notion of pleading with "particularity."

Regarded as the most stringent pleading standard, the Second Circuit requirement is that the plaintiff state facts with particularity, and that these facts, in turn, must give rise to a "strong inference" of the defendant's fraudulent intent. Because the Conference Committee intends to strengthen existing pleading requirements, it does not intend to codify the Second Circuit's case law interpreting this pleading standard. [FN23] The plaintiff must also specifically plead with particularity each statement alleged to have been misleading. The reason or reasons why the statement is misleading must also be set forth in the compliant in detail. If an allegation is made on information and belief, the plaintiff must state with particularity all facts in the plaintiff's possession on which the belief is

H.R. Case 1:07-cw10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 39gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

formed.

Loss causation

The Conference Committee also requires the plaintiff to plead and then to prove that the misstatement or omission alleged in the complaint actually caused the loss incurred by the plaintiff in new Section 21D(b)(4) of the 1934 Act. For example, the plaintiff would have to prove that the price at which the plaintiff bought the stock was artificially inflated as the result of the misstatement or omission.

**741 *42 DAMAGES

Written interrogatories

In an action to recover money damages, the Conference Committee requires the court to submit written interrogatories to the jury on the issue of defendant's state of mind at the time of the violation. In expressly providing for certain interrogatories, the Committee does not intend to otherwise prohibit or discourage the submission of interrogatories concerning the mental state or relative fault of the plaintiff and of persons who could have been joined as defendants. For example, interrogatories may be appropriate in contribution proceedings among defendants or in computing liability when some of the defendants have entered into settlement with the plaintiff prior to verdict or judgment.

Limitation on "windfall" damages

The current method of calculating damages in 1934 Act securities fraud cases is complex and uncertain. As a result, there are often substantial variations in the damages calculated by the defendants and the plaintiffs. Typically, in an action involving a fraudulent misstatement or omission, the investor's damages are presumed to be the difference between the price the investor paid for the security and the price of the security on the day the corrective information gets disseminated to the market.

Between the time a misrepresentation is made and the time the market receives corrected information, however, the price of the security may rise or fall for reasons unrelated to the alleged fraud. According to an analysis provided to the Senate Securities Subcommittee, on average, damages in securities litigation comprise approximately 27.7 [FN24] of market loss. Calculating damages based on the date corrective information is disclosed may end up substantially overestimating plaintiff's damages. [FN25] The Conference Committee intends to rectify the uncertainty in calculating damages in new section 21D(e) of the 1934 Act by providing a "look back" period, thereby limiting damages to those losses caused by the fraud and not by other market conditions.

This provision requires that plaintiff's damages be calculated based on the "mean trading price" of the security. This calculation takes into account the value of the security on the date plaintiff originally bought or sold the security and the value of the security during the 90-day period after dissemination of any

н. R. Case 1:07-см 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 40 of 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

information correcting the misleading statement or omission. If the plaintiff sells those securities or repurchases the subject securities during the 90-day period, damages will be calculated based on the price of that transaction and the value of the security immediately after the dissemination of corrective information.

SAFE HARBOR FOR FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The muzzling effect of abusive securities litigation

Abusive litigation severely affects the willingness of corporate managers to disclose information to the marketplace. Former SEC Chairman Richard Breeden testified in a Senate Securities Subcommittee hearing on this subject: "Shareholders are also damaged **742 *43 due to the chilling effect of the current system on the robustness and candor of disclosure. . . . Understanding a company's own assessment of its future potential would be among the most valuable information shareholders and potential investors could have about a firm." [FN26]

Fear that inaccurate projections will trigger the filing of securities class action lawsuit has muzzled corporate management. One study found that over two-thirds of venture capital firms were reluctant to discuss their performance with analysts or the public because of the threat of litigation. [FN27] Anecdotal evidence similarly indicates corporate counsel advise clients to say as little as possible, because "legions of lawyers scrub required filings to ensure that disclosures are as milquetoast as possible, so as to provide no grist for the litigation mill." [FN28]

Technology companies-because of the volatility of their stock prices-are particularly vulnerable to securities fraud lawsuits when projections do not materialize. If a company fails to satisfy its announced earnings projections-perhaps because of changes in the economy or the timing of an order or new product-the company is likely to face a lawsuit.

A statutory safe harbor for forward-looking statements

The Conference Committee has adopted a statutory "safe harbor" to enhance market efficiency by encouraging companies to disclose forward-looking information. This provision adds a new section 27A to the 1933 Act and a new section 21E of the 1934 Act which protects from liability in private lawsuits certain "forward-looking" statements made by persons specified in the legislation. [FN29]

The Conference Committee has crafted a safe harbor that differs from the safe harbor provisions in the House and Senate passed bills. The Conference Committee safe harbor, like the Senate safe harbor, is based on aspects of SEC Rule 175 and the judicial created "bespeaks caution" doctrine. It is a bifurcated safe harbor that permits greater flexibility to those who may avail themselves of safe harbor protection. There is also a special safe harbor for issuers who make oral forward-looking statements.

The first prong of the safe harbor protects a written or oral forward-looking statement that is: (i) identified as forward-looking, and (ii) accompanied by

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

meaningful cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those projected in the statement.

Under this first prong of the safe harbor, boilerplate warnings will not suffice as meaningful cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those projected in the statement. The cautionary statements must convey substantive information about factors that realistically could cause results to differ materially from those projected in the forward-looking statement, such as, for example, information about the issuer's business.

As part of the analysis of what constitutes a meaningful cautionary statement, courts should consider the factors identified in the statements. "Important" factors means the stated factors identified in the cautionary statement must be relevant to the projection *44 **743 and must be of a nature that the factor or factors could actually affect whether the forward-looking statement is realized.

The Conference Committee expects that the cautionary statements identify important factors that could cause results to differ materially-but not all factors. Failure to include the particular factor that ultimately causes the forward-looking statement not to come true will not mean that the statement is not protected by the safe harbor. The Conference Committee specifies that the cautionary statements identify "important" factors to provide guidance to issuers and not to provide an opportunity for plaintiff counsel to conduct discovery on what factors were known to the issuer at the time the forward-looking statement was made.

The use of the words "meaningful" and "important factors" are intended to provide a standard for the types of cautionary statements upon which a court may, where appropriate, decide a motion to dismiss, without examining the state of mind of the defendant. The first prong of the safe harbor requires courts to examine only the cautionary statement accompanying the forward-looking statement. Courts should not examine the state of mind of the person making the statement.

Courts may continue to find a forward-looking statement immaterial-and thus not actionable under the 1933 Act and the 1934 Act-on other grounds. To clarify this point, the Conference Committee includes language in the safe harbor provision that no liability attaches to forward-looking statements that are "immaterial."

The safe harbor seeks to provide certainty that forward-looking statements will not be actionable by private parties under certain circumstances. Forward-looking statements will have safe harbor protection if they are accompanied by a meaning-ful cautionary statement. A cautionary statement that misstates historical facts is not covered by the Safe harbor, it is not sufficient, however, in a civil action to allege merely that a cautionary statement misstates historical facts. The plaintiff must plead with particularity all facts giving rise to a strong inference of a material misstatement in the cautionary statement to survive a motion to dismiss.

The second prong of the safe harbor provides an alternative analysis. This safe harbor also applies to both written and oral forward-looking statements. Instead of examining the forward-looking and cautionary statements, this prong of the safe harbor focuses on the state of mind of the person making the forward-looking statement. A person or business entity will not be liable in a private lawsuit for

н. R. Case 1:07-суд 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 429ef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

a forward-looking statement unless a plaintiff proves that person or business entity made a false or misleading forward-looking statement with actual knowledge that it was false or misleading. The Conference Committee intends for this alternative prong of the safe harbor to apply if the plaintiff fails to prove the forward-looking statement (1) if made by a natural person, was made with the actual knowledge by that person that the statement was false or misleading; or (2) if made by a business entity, was made by or with the approval of an executive officer of the entity with actual knowledge by that officer that the statement was false or misleading.

**744 *45 The Conference Committee recognizes that, under certain circumstances, it may be unwieldy to make oral forward-looking statements relying on the first prong of the safe harbor. Companies who want to make a brief announcement of earnings or a new product would first have to identify the statement as forward-looking and then provide cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause results to differ materially from those projected in the statement. As a result, the Conference Committee has provided for an optional, more flexible rule for oral forward-looking statements that will facilitate these types of oral communications by an issuer while still providing to the public information it would have received if the forward-looking statement was written. The Conference Committee intends to limit this oral safe harbor to issuers or the officers, directors, or employees of the issuer acting on the issuer's behalf.

This legislation permits covered issuers, or persons acting on the issuer's behalf, to make oral forward-looking statements within the safe harbor. The person making the forward-looking statement must identify the statement as a forward-looking statement and state that results may differ materially from those projected in the statement. The person must also identify a "readily available" written document that contains factors that could cause results to differ materially. The written information identified by the person making the forward-looking statement must qualify as a "cautionary statement" under the first prong of the safe harbor (i.e., it must be a meaningful cautionary statement or statements that identify important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those projected in the forward-looking statement.) For purposes of this provision, "readily available" information refers to SEC filed documents, annual reports and other widely disseminated materials, such as press releases.

Who and what receives safe harbor protection

The safe harbor provision protects written and oral forward-looking statements made by issuers and certain persons retained or acting on behalf of the issuer. The Conference Committee intends the statutory safe harbor protection to make more information about a company's future plans available to investors and the public. The safe harbor covers underwriters, but only insofar as the underwriters provide forward looking information that is based on or "derived from" information provided by the issuer. Because underwriters have what is effectively an adversarial relationship with issuers in performing due diligence, the use of the term "derived from" affords underwriters some latitude so that they may disclose adverse information that the issuer did not necessarily "provide." The Conference

н. R. Coase 1:07-см 10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 43-2 f 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

Committee does not intend the safe harbor to cover forward-looking information made in connection with a broker's sales practices.

The Conference Committee adopts the SEC's present definition, as set forth in Rule 175, of forward-looking information, with certain additions and clarifying changes. The definition covers: (i) certain financial items, including projections of revenues, income and earnings, capital expenditures, dividends, and capital structure; (ii) management's statement of future business plans and objectives, *46 **745 including with respect to its products or services; and (iii) certain statements made in SEC required disclosures, including management's discussion and analysis and results of operations; and (iv) any statement disclosing the assumptions underlying the forward-looking statement.

The Conference Committee has determined that the statutory safe harbor should not apply to certain forward-looking statements. Thus, the statutory safe harbor does not protect forward-looking statements: (1) included in financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles; (2) contained in an initial public offering registration statement; (3) made in connection with a tender offer; (4) made in connection with a partnership, limited liability company or direct participation program offering; or (5) made in beneficial ownership disclosure statements filed with the SEC under Section 13(d) of the 1934 Act.

At this time, the Conference Committee recognizes that certain types of transactions and issuers may not be suitable for inclusion in a statutory safe harbor absent some experience with the statute. Although this legislation restricts partnerships, limited liability companies and direct participation programs from safe harbor protection, the Conference Committee expects the SEC to consider expanding the safe harbor to cover these entities where appropriate. The legislation authorizes the SEC to adopt exemptive rules or grant exemptive orders to those entities for whom a safe harbor should be available. The SEC should consider granting exemptive orders for established and reputable entities who are excluded from the safe harbor.

Moreover, the Committee has determined to extend the statutory safe harbor only to forward-looking information of certain established issuers subject to the reporting requirements of section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the 1934 Act. Except as provided by SEC rule or regulation, the safe harbor does not extend to an issuer who: (a) during the three year period preceding the date on which the statement was first made, has been convicted of a felony or misdemeanor described in clauses (i) through (iv) of Section 15(b)(4) or is the subject of a decree or order involving a violation of the securities laws; (b) makes the statement in connection with a "blank check" securities offering, "rollup transaction," or "going private" transaction; or (c) issues penny stock.

The Committee intends for its statutory safe harbor provisions to serve as a starting point and fully expects the SEC to continue its rulemaking proceedings in this area. The SEC should, as appropriate, promulgate rules or regulations to expand the statutory safe harbor by providing additional exemptions from liability or extending its coverage to additional types of information.

This legislation also makes clear that nothing in the safe harbor provision im-

н. R. Case 1:07-см10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 44gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

poses any duty to update forward-looking statements.

The Conference Committee does not intend for the safe harbor provisions to replace the judicial "bespeaks caution" doctrine or to foreclose further development of that doctrine by the courts.

**746 *47 The safe harbor and stay of discovery

The legislation provides that, on any motion to dismiss the compliant based on the application of the safe harbor, the court shall consider the statements cited in the complaint and statements identified by the defendant in its moving papers, including any cautionary statements accompanying the forward-looking statement that are not subject to material dispute. The applicability of the safe harbor provisions under subsection (c)(1)(B) shall be based on the "actual knowledge" of the defendant and does not depend on the use of cautionary language. The applicability of the safe harbor provisions under subsections (c)(1)(A)(I) and (c)(2) shall be based upon the sufficiency of the cautionary language under those provisions and does not depend on the state of mind of the defendant. In the case of a compliant based on an oral forward-looking statement in which information concerning factors that could cause actual results to differ materially is contained in a "readily available" written document, the court shall consider statements in the readily available written documents.

INAPPLICABILITY OF RACKETEER INFLUENCED AND CORRUPT ORGANIZATIONS ACT (RICO) TO PRIVATE SECURITIES ACTIONS.

The SEC has supported removing securities fraud as a predicate offense in a civil action under the Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organizations Act ("RICO"). SEC Chairman Arthur Levitt testified: "Because the securities laws generally provide adequate remedies for those injured by securities fraud, it is both necessary and unfair to expose defendants in securities cases to the threat of treble damages and other extraordinary remedies provided by RICO." [FN30]

The Conference Committee amends <u>section 1964(c)</u> of title 18 of the U.S. <u>Code</u> to remove any conduct that would have been actionable as fraud in the purchase or sale of securities as racketeering activity under civil RICO. The Committee intends this amendment to eliminate securities fraud as a predicate offense in a civil RICO action. In addition, the Conference Committee intends that a plaintiff may not plead other specified offenses, such as mail or wire fraud, as predicate acts under civil RICO if such offenses are based on conduct that would have been actionable as securities fraud.

AUDITOR DISCLOSURE OF CORPORATE FRAUD

The Conference Report requires independent public accountants to adopt certain procedures in connection with their audits and to inform the SEC of illegal acts. These requirements would be carried out in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards for audits of SEC registrants-as modified from time to time by the Commission-on the detection of illegal acts, related party transactions and

н. R. . Coase 1:07-см 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 45-gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

relationships, and evaluation of an issuer's ability to continue as a going concern.

The Conference Committee does not intend to affect the Commission's authority in areas not specifically addressed by this provision. The Conference Committee expects that the SEC will continue its longstanding practice of looking to the private sector to set **747 *48 and to improve auditing standards. The SEC should not act to "modify" or "supplement" generally accepted auditing standards for SEC registrants until after it has determined that the private sector is unable or unwilling to do so on a timely basis. The Conference Committee intends for the SEC to have discretion, however, to determine the appropriateness and timeliness of the private sector response. The SEC should act promptly if required by the public interest or for the protection of investors.

FOOTNOTES

**748 *49 From the Committee on Commerce, for consideration of the House bill, and the Senate amendment, and modifications committed to conference:

Thomas Bliley,

Billy Tauzin,

Jack Fields,

Chris Cox,

Richard F. White,

Anna G. Eshoo,

As additional conferees from the Committee on the Judiciary, for consideration of the House bill, and the Senate amendment, and modifications committed to conference:

Bill McCollum,

Managers on the Part of the House.

Alfonse D'Amato,

Phil Gramm,

Robert F. Bennett,

Rod Grams,

Pete V. Domenici,

Christopher Dodd,

John F. Kerry,

н. R. Coase 1:07-см 10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 46-9 f 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

Managers on the Part of the Senate.

FN1 This certification should not be construed to waive the attorney-client privilege.

FN2 The notice provisions in this subsection do not replace or supersede other notice provisions provided in the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

FN3 See Elliott J. Weiss and John S. Beckerman, "Let the Money Do the Monitoring: How Institutional Investors Can Reduce Agency Costs in Securities Class Actions," 104 Yale L.J. 2053 (1995).

FN4 See testimony of Maryellen Anderson, Investor and Corporate Relations Director of the Connecticut Retirement & Trust Funds and Treasurer of the Council of Institutional Investors before the Securities Subcommittee of the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, July 21, 1993.

FN5 See The Brancato Report on Institutional Investment, "Total Assets and Equity Holdings," Vol. 2, Ed. 1.

FN6 See "Let the Money do the Monitoring," note 3, supra.

FN7 See generally Majority Staff Report, May 17, 1994 at page 81 et seq.

FN8 See testimony of Patricia Reilly before the Securities Subcommittee of the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, June 17, 1993.

FN9 See NASCAT Analysis of Pending Legislation on Securities Fraud Litigation, Hearing on Securities Litigation Reform Proposals: Subcommittee on Securities, Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, March 2, 1995.

FN10 See testimony of Patricia Reilly, note 8 supra.

FN11 See testimony of former SEC Commissioner J. Carter Beese, Jr., Chairman of the Capital Markets Regulatory Reform Project Center for Strategic and International Studies, before the Securities Subcommittee of the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, March 2, 1995 (citing testimony of Philip A. Lacavara before the Telecommunications and Finance Subcommittee of the House Committee on Energy and Commerce, hearing on H.R. 3185.)

FN12 See testimony of Richard J. Egan, Chairman of the Board of EMC Corporation before the Securities Subcommittee of the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, June 17, 1993. See also testimony of Dennis Bakke, President and CEO, AES Corporation, before the Telecommunications and Finance Subcommittee of the House Committee on Commerce, January 19, 1995.

FN13 See testimony of Hon. Richard Breeden, former Chairman, Securities and Exchange Commission, before the Subcommittee on Telecommunications and Finance, House Commerce Committee, February 10, 1995. See also testimony of Daniel Gelzer,

н. R. Case 1:07-суд 10258-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 47gef 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

id. at 274.

FN14 See testimony of Hon. Arthur Levitt, Chairman, Securities and Exchange Commission, before the Subcommittee on Telecommunications and Finance of the House Commerce Committee, February 10, 1995, at 192. See also id. at 116, 126 (testimony of Dennis W. Bakke, Chairman and CEO, AES Corporation); id. at 137-8 (testimony of James Kimsey, Chairman, America Online).

FN15 The Conference Report makes no change in the law with respect to Section 11 claims against other types of defendants. Section 11 expressly provides for a right of contribution, see Section 11(f), and this right has been construed to establish contribution and settlement standards like those set forth in the Conference Report. This section has no effect on the interpretation of Section 11(f) with respect to defendants other than outside directors.

FN16 See Section 16(b) (short-swing transactions) and Section 18 (liability for misleading statements).

FN17 See, e.g., testimony of Saul S. Cohen, Rosenman & Colin, before the Telecommunications and Finance Subcommittee of the House Committee on Commerce, February 10, 1995. ("In our experience, Rule 11 has been largely ineffective in deterring strike suits. As a general matter, courts rarely grant Rule 11 sanctions in all but the most egregious circumstances".)

FN18 Rule 11(c)(2) limits sanctions to "what is sufficient to deter the repetition of such conduct or comparable conduct by others similarly situated".

FN19 See testimony of John Olson, Chairman, American Bar Association Business Law Section, before the Subcommittee on Telecommunications and Finance, House Commerce Committee, February 10, 1995.

FN20 See id.

FN21 See, e.g., testimony of Saul S. Cohen, Rosenman & Colin, before the Tele-communications and Finance Subcommittee of the House Committee on Commerce at 234-35 (February 10, 1995).

FN22 See id.

FN23 For this reason, the Conference Report chose not to include in the pleading standard certain language relating to motive, opportunity, or recklessness.

FN24 The percentages of damages as market losses in the analysis ranged from 7.9% to 100% See Princeton Venture Research, Inc., "PVR Analysis, Securities Law Class Actions, Damages as a Percent of Market Losses," June 15, 1993.

FN25 See Lev and de Villiers, "Stock Price Crashes and 10b-5 Damages: A Legal, Economic and Policy Analysis," Standford Law Review, 7, 9-11 (1994).

н. R. Case 1:07-см10358-SHS Document 23-2 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 48-26 48

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730)

FN26 See testimony of Hon. Richard C. Breeden, former Chairman, SEC, before the Securities Subcommittee of the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, April 6, 1995.

FN27 See testimony of the National Venture Capital Association before the Securities Subcommittee on the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, March 2, 1995.

FN28 See testimony of Hon. J. Carter Beese, former SEC Commissioner, at id.

FN29 The concept of a safe harbor for forward-looking statements made under certain conditions is not new. In 1979, the SEC promulgated Rule 175 to provide a safe harbor for certain forward looking statements made with a "reasonable basis" and in "good faith." This safe harbor has not provided companies meaningful protection from litigation. In a February 1995 letter to the SEC, a major pension fund stated: "A major failing of the existing safe harbor is that while it may provide theoretical protection to issuers from liability when disclosing projections, it fails to prevent the threat of frivolous lawsuits that arises every time a legitimate projection is not realized." See February 14, 1995 letter from the California Public Employees' Retirement System to the SEC. Courts have also crafted a safe harbor for forward-looking statements or projections accompanied by sufficient cautionary language. The First, Second, Third, Sixth and Ninth Circuits have adopted a version of the "bespeaks caution" doctrine. See, e.g., In re Worlds of Wonder Securities Litigation, 35 F. 3d 1407 (9th Cir. 1994); Rubinstein v. Collins, 20 F.3d 169 (5th Cir. 1994): Kline v. First Western Government Securities, Inc., 24 F. 3d 480 (3d Cir. 1994); Sinay v. Lamson & Sessions Company, 948 F.2d 1037 (6th Cir. 1991); I. Meyer Pincus & Associates v. Oppenheimer & Co., 936 F.2d 759 (2d Cir. 1991); Romani v. Shearson Lehman Hutton, 929 F.2d 875 (1st Cir. 1991); Luce v. Edelstein, 802 F.2d 49 (2d Cir. 1986); In re Donald J. Trump Casino, 7 F.3d 357 (3d Cir. 1993).

FN30 See testimony of Hon. Arthur Levitt, Chairman, SEC, before the Telecommunications and Finance Subcommittee of the House Commerce Committee, February 10, 1995.

H.R. CONF. REP. 104-369, H.R. Conf. Rep. No. 369, 104TH Cong., 1ST Sess. 1995, 1995 U.S.C.C.A.N. 730, 1995 WL 709276 (Leg.Hist.)

END OF DOCUMENT

Case 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-3

Filed 01/07/2008

Page 1 of United States Courts Southern District of Texas

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS HOUSTON DIVISION

AUG 1 6 2002

Michael N. Milby, Clerk

In Re Enron Corporation Securities, Derivative & "ERISA Litigation

MDL-1446

THIS DOCUMENT RELATES TO:

All Cases

MARK NEWBY, ET AL.,

Plaintiffs

VS.

ENRON CORPORATION, ET AL.,

Defendants

CIVIL ACTION NO. H-01-3624 CONSOLIDATED CASES



Pending before the Court is Lead Plaintiff the Regents of the University of California's motion for a limited production of Enron documents (instrument #802).

Lead Plaintiff explains that in the New York bankruptcy court it moved for a limited modification of the automatic stay as to Debtor Enron Corporation to obtain copies of all documents and materials produced by the Debtor related to any inquiry or investigation by any legislative branch committee, the executive branch, including the Department of Justice and the Securities and Exchange Commission, and all transcripts of witness interviews or depositions related to those inquiries. After review of the briefing and oral argument, on May 22, 2002 Judge Arthur Gonzalez lifted the automatic stay, provided that this Court determines that the PSLRA's discovery stay should be lifted, to require Enron to produce such documents, subject to any attorney-client privilege or work product protection asserted by Enron and a reasonable time for review. Ex. to Motion. Because these materials have already been made available to and reviewed by numerous governmental entities and others, Lead Plaintiff asks the Court to order the PSLRA's discovery stay to be lifted for the same reasons it did in its February 27, 2002 scheduling order,



when it lifted the stay as to certain ERISA documents and made them available to both <u>Tittle</u> and <u>Newby</u> Plaintiffs because the PSLRA's discovery stay "was designed to prevent fishing expeditions in frivolous securities lawsuits" and "was not designed to keep secret from counsel in securities cases documents that have already become available for review by means other than discovery in the securities case." Feb. 27, 2002 Order (#326) at 3-4.

Opposition has been filed by Enron Corporation (#883), joined by Defendant Kenneth Lay (#884) and Certain Officer Defendants (Richard Buy, Richard Causey, Kenneth Rice, Joseph M. Hirko, Stanley C. Horton, Steven Kean, Kevin Hannon, Mark Frevert, Mark Koenig, Jeff McMahon, Lawrence Whalley and Cindy K. Olson)(#890). Emphasizing the unambiguous text of 15 U.S.C. § 78u-4(b)(3)(B), which allows only two exceptions to the PSLRA's ban on discovery during pendency of motions to discuss, Defendants note that Lead Plaintiff does not claim that it can show that particularized discovery is essential to preserve evidence or to prevent prejudice to Lead Plaintiff. They complain, "Plaintiff offers no authority or rationale for expanding the Court's Scheduling Order's accommodation of the ERISA claims to order wholesale production of hundreds of thousands of pages of documents in the securities case." Defendants insist that the PSLRA prohibits discovery requests, whether a "fishing expedition" or a "surgical strike." They argue that until the Court rules on the motions to dismiss challenging the legal sufficiency of the amended consolidated complaint, the securities action "should stand or fall based on the actual knowledge of the plaintiffs rather than information produced by the defendants after the action has been filed," as Congress intended. SG Cowan Securities Corp. v. U.S.D.C. of the N.D. Cal., 189 F.3d 909, 912 (9th Cir. 1999).

¹ Section 78u-4(b)(3)(B) provides,

In any private action arising under this chapter, all discovery and other proceedings shall be stayed during the pendency of any motion to dismiss, unless the court finds upon motion of any party that particularized discovery is necessary to preserve evidence or to prevent prejudice to that party.

In reply, Lead Plaintiff underlines the point that this request does not "pose . . . a threat of the abusive litigation threatened by the PSLRA" and that "Defendants therefore should not be allowed to hide behind the statute." While recognizing that the PSLRA's discovery stay protected Defendants from unnecessary discovery costs, Lead Plaintiff argues that here the burden would be slight because Enron has already found, reviewed, and organized the documents. The Court agrees. In a sense this discovery has already been made, and it is merely a question of keeping it from a party because of the strictures of a statute designed to prevent discovery abuse. Accordingly, the Court

ORDERS that the motion for limited production is **GRANTED**.

SIGNED at Houston, Texas, this 15 day of August, 2002.

MELINDA HARMON
LINITED STATES DISTRICT HIDGE

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS HOUSTON DIVISION

FEB 28 2002

MARK-NEWBY,-ET-AL-,	
Plaintiffs }	
VS.	CIVIL ACTION NO. H-01-3624
ENRON CORPORATION, ET AL., }	AND CONSOLIDATED CASES
Defendants }	
PIRRELLI ARMSTRONG TIRE CORPORATION } RETIREE MEDICAL BENEFITS TRUST, } Derivatively On Behalf of ENRON CORPORATION, } ET. AL., Plaintiffs }	
VS. }	CIVIL ACTION NO. H-01-3645 AND CONSOLIDATED CASES
KENNETH LAY, ET AL.,	
Defendants }	
PAMELA M. TITTLE, on behalf of herself and a class of persons similarly situated, ET AL.,	
Plaintiffs }	
VS. }	CIVIL ACTION NO. H-01-3913 AND CONSOLIDATED CASES
ENRON CORP., an Oregon Corporation, ET AL.,	
Defendants. }	

SCHEDULING ORDER

On February 25, 2002 this Court held a scheduling conference participated in by the consolidated *Tittle* parties and the consolidated *Newby* parties. The Court heard

from plaintiffs and defendants in each case and has considered the arguments of all sides. The consolidated *Pirrelli* case has been automatically stayed by the Enron bankruptcy proceeding and remains so. That stay of claims against Enron Corporation in the *Tittle* consolidated action was lifted by The Hon. Arthur J. Gonzalez, United States Bankruptcy Judge, Southern District of New York, for the limited purpose of allowing, *inter alia*, Enron to participate in the scheduling of the *Tittle* case.

The Court is mindful that the eyes of the nation are on this Court and the civil justice system to see if we are up to the challenge of giving to all parties in these suits their day in court. It is the nation's impression that the justice system grinds slowly in a Dickensian fashion, and it is the hope of this Court that that impression can be changed by an efficient resolution of these cases. To that end, the Court finds that the agreed to and proposed schedules submitted by the plaintiffs and defendants are each deficient in some respect. The Court has taken into account the positions and arguments of each group of parties and has fashioned what the Court believes to be a workable schedule, one that will require the expenditure of a great deal of time and energy by the lawyers and parties, but one that will bring this case to resolution in as short a time frame as humanly possible, while serving the interests of justice. The scheduled dates are considered by this Court to be FIRM DATES. These are not floating dates subject to change without sufficient reason. By separate order the Court will establish a monthly conference call so that counsel-and-the-Gourt-may confer. Accordingly, it is hereby

¹At this time, because the Detective Endowment Association Annuity Fund has moved in the Bankruptcy Court to lift the stay as to the shareholder derivative suits, the Court chooses not to administratively close the *Pirrelli* action.

order order

ORDERED that, pursuant to the order of the Honorable Arthur J. Gonzalez, United States Bankruptcy Judge for the Southern District of New York, partially lifting the bankruptcy stay, Enron Corporation will produce, subject to attorney client privilege or work product protection:

- (1) a copy of all documents and materials Enron has produced since filing for bankruptcy in connection with any inquiry(ies) or investigation(s) into the Company's handling of its ERISA-governed pension plans, that were provided, or that may be provided, pursuant to subpoena
 (a) by any committee of the Legislative branch of the United States
 - (b) by the Executive branch of the United States Government, including, but not limited to, the Department of Labor, and
- (2) copies of all transcripts of witness interviews or depositions in Enron's possession, custody or control, given or taken in connection with said inquiry(ies) or investigation(s).

These copies of documents, transcripts and depositions shall be deposited in the document depository in Houston, Texas by April 1, 2002 and made available to all lawyers in both the consolidated *Tittle* and *Newby* cases. The automatic stay of discovery

Government, or

mandated by the PSLRA was designed to prevent fishing expeditions in frivolous securities lawsuits. It was not designed to keep secret from counsel in securities cases documents that have become available for review by means other than discovery in the securities case. Furthermore, as pointed out during the hearing, the *Tittle* plaintiffs are included within the putative class of the *Newby* case. Any materials withheld because of privilege or work product shall be documented in a privileged log. It is further

ORDERED that interrogatories, requests for admissions, and document requests that plaintiffs in the *Newby* or *Tittle* case wish to propound to defendants, including Enron, be proposed as soon as possible so that, should any claims survive the motions to dismiss, the *Newby* and *Tittle* defendants will have had an opportunity to review the discovery requests during the pendency of the motions to dismiss and can respond within a reasonable time frame after a ruling on the motions, should a response be necessary. In no event shall Enron's answer, objection, or other response to the discovery be required until the bankruptcy stay is lifted for all purposes on June 21, 2002, pursuant to Judge Gonzalez's Order. It is further

ORDERED that the plaintiffs in the *Tittle* case, inasmuch as they are not subject to the PSLRA stay of discovery, may immediately begin any discovery unique to their case that has not been stayed in the *Newby* case by the PSLRA. All discovery shall be placed in the document depository in Houston, Texas. It is further

ORDERED that expert witnesses, whether on the class issues or on the merits of the case, shall be designated by a party and shall file at that time a comprehensive expert report. The counter expert must then be designated and provide his or her comprehensive report. Waiting to depose the counter expert until after a first

designated expert has been deposed will unnecessarily prolong the discovery process.

Accordingly, it is hereby

ORDERED that the Pretrial Scheduling Order, which shall apply to the consolidated *Tittle* and *Newby* cases shall be as follows:

		•
Consolidated Complaints filed by	April 1, 2002	/
Motions to dismiss due	May 1, 2002	/
Opposition to Motions to dismiss	June 3, 2001	! ! ! !
Replies to Opposition to Motions to dismiss	June 17, 2002	
Class discovery begins	July 1, 2002	1
Class discovery ends	September 2, 2002	
Plaintiffs' Motions for Class Certification	October 1, 2002	
Defendants' Opposition	November 1, 2002	
Plaintiffs' Replies	December 2, 2002	
Deadline to join new parties or to file third party complaints or cross complaints/claims:	January 2, 2003	1
All fact discovery completed by	April 1, 2003	
Plaintiffs' expert witnesses named and a comprehensive report of the experts' opinions furnished by	April 15, 2003	/
Defendants' expert witnesses named and a comprehensive report of the experts' opinions furnished by	May 15, 2003	لنحمن
Expert Discovery completed by	July 2, 2003	
Motions for Summary Judgment and all other dispositive motions_filed_and_served-by	August 15, 2003	
Joint Pretrial Order filed by	October 15, 2003	
Plaintiffs are responsible for filing the Pretrial Order on time.		***************************************
Docket Call is set for 1:30 pm	November 14, 2003	1
		ĩ

Case 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-4 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 6 of

SIGNED at Houston, Texas, this 27th day of February, 2002.

MELINDA-HARMON

UNITED STATES DISTRICT JUDGE

Westlaw.

S. REP. 107-205 Page 1

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

*1 PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING REFORM AND INVESTOR PROTECTION ACT OF 2002

SENATE REPORT NO. 107-205 July 3, 2002

Mr. Sarbanes, from the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, submitted the following

REPORT

[To accompany S. 2673]

The Committee on Banking, Housing and Urban Affairs reported an original bill to improve quality and transparency in financial reporting and independent audits and accounting services for public companies, to create a Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, to enhance the standard setting process for accounting practices, to strengthen the independence of firms that audit public companies, to increase corporate responsibility and the usefulness of corporate financial disclosure, to protect the objectivity and independence of securities analysts, to improve Securities and Exchange Commission resources and oversight, and for other purposes, and reports favorably thereon and recommends that the bill do pass.

COMMITTEE ON BANKING, HOUSING, AND URBAN AFFAIRS

(II)

CONTENTS

I	Page
Introduction	1
Purpose of the Legislation	2
Hearings	2
Title-by-Title Summary of Major Provisions	4
Title I-Public Company Accounting Oversight Board	4
A. Appointment and Operation of Board	6
B. Registration of Accounting Firms	7
C. Auditing, QualityControl, Ethics, and Independence Standards and Rules	8
D. Inspections of Registered Accounting Firms	9
E. Investigations and Disciplinary Proceedings	10
F. Foreign Public Accounting Firms	11
G. SEC Oversight of the Board	12
H. Accounting Principles	12
I. Funding	13
Title II-Auditor Independence	14

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

(Leg.Hist.)

A. Services Outside the Scope of Practice of Auditors	15
B. Audit Committee Pre-Approval of Audit and Non-Audit Services	19
C. Audit Partner Rotation	
D. Disclosures of Accounting Issues	21
E. Cooling Off Period	22
F. The Bill Does Not Create State Regulatory Standards	23
Title III-Corporate Responsibility	23
A. Issuer Audit Committees	23
B. Corporate Responsibility for Financial Reports	25
C. Prohibited Influence	26
D. Forfeiture of Bonuses and Profits	26
E. Officer and Director Bars and Penalties	26
F. Prohibition on Insider Trades During Pension Fund Blackout Periods	27
Title IV-Enhanced Financial Disclosures	28
A. Accounting Adjustments	28
B. Off-Balance Sheet Transactions	28
C. Pro-Forma Financial Disclosures	28
D. Enhanced Disclosures of Loans	29
E. Disclosures of Transactions Involving Management	30
F. Management Assessment of Internal Controls	31
G. Exemptions for Investment Companies	
H. Code of Ethics for Senior Financial Officers	32
I. Disclosure of Audit Committee Financial Expert	32
Title V-Analyst Conflicts of Interest	
Title VI-Commission Resources and Authority	
Title VII-Studies and Reports	
Section-by-Section Analysis	
Section 1. Short title and table of contents	
Section 2. Definitions	
Section 3. Commission Rules and Enforcement	
Title I-Public Company Accounting Oversight Board	
Section 101. Establishment	
Section 102. Registration with the Board	
Section 103. Auditing, qualitycontrol, and independence standardsand	
rules	46
Section 104. Inspections of registered public accounting firms	
Section 105. Investigations and disciplinary proceedings	
Section 106. Foreign public accounting firms	
Section 107. Commission oversight of the Board	
Section 108. Accounting standards	
Section 109. Funding	
Title II-Auditor Independence	
Section 201. Services outside the auditor scope of practice	
Section 202. Pre-approval requirements	
Section 203. Audit partner rotation	
Section 204. Auditor report to Audit Committees	
Deceron 201. Addition report to Addit Committees	2

S. REP. 07-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Section	205.	Conforming amendments	52
Section	206.	Conflicts of interest	52
Section	207.	Studyofmandatoryrotationofregisteredpubl accounting firms 52	2
Section	208.	Commission authority	52
Section	209.	Considerationsbyappropriatestateregulato authorities 52	2
Title II	II-Cor	rporate Responsibility	52
Section	301.	Issuer Audit Committees	52
Section	302.	Corporate responsibility for financial reports	53
Section	303.	Prohibited influence	53
Section	304.	Forfeiture of certain bonuses and profits	53
Section	305.	Officer and director bars and penalties	53
Section	306.	Insider trades during pension fund black outperiods	
prohik	oited		53
Title IV	7-Enha	anced Financial Disclosures	54
Section	401.	Disclosures in periodic reports	54
Section	402.	Enhanced disclosures of loans	54
Section	403.	Disclosures of transactions involving management	54
Section	404.	Management assessment of internal controls	54
Section	405.	Exemption	54
Section	406.	Code of ethics for senior financial officers	54
Section	407.	Audit Committee financial expert	55
Title V-	-Analy	st Conflicts of Interest	55
Section	501.	Treatment of securities analysts by registered securities	
associ	lation	ns	55
Title VI	-Comn	mission Resources and Authority	56
Section	601.	Authorization of appropriations	56
Section	602.	Appearance and practice before the SEC	56
Section	603.	Federal court authority to impose penny stock bars	56
Section	604.	Qualificationsofassociatedpersonsofbroke dealers 56	
Title VI	II-Stu	dies and Reports	56
Section	701.	GAO study and report regarding consolidation of public	
accour	nting	firms	56
Section	702.	Commission study and report regarding rating agencies	57
Changes	in Ex	risting Law	57
Regulato	ory In	mpact Statement	57
Cost of	Legis	slation	58
Addition	nal vi	lews of:Senator Gramm	66
Senator	Enzi		68

107th Congress

INTRODUCTION

On June 18, 2002, the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs considered the "Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002," a bill to improve quality and transparency in financial reporting and inde-

S. REP C459 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 4 of 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

pendent audits and accounting services for public companies, to create a Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, to enhance the standard-setting process for accounting practices, to strengthen the independence of firms audit public companies; state authorities should not presume that the standards applied under the bill should apply to those companies under state regulatory schemes.

The bill also requires steps to enhance the direct responsibility of senior corporate management for financial reporting and for the quality of financial disclosures made by public companies. The bill establishes clear statutory rules to limit, and expose to public view, possible conflicts of interest affecting securities analysts. Finally, the bill authorizes substantially higher funding for the Securities and Exchange Commission.

HEARINGS

The Banking Committee's action followed ten hearings on the accounting and investor protection issues raised by the financial revelations involving Enron and other public companies. These issues include: the integrity of certified financial audits; appropriate accounting principles and auditing standards; the effectiveness of the accounting regulatory oversight system; the importance of auditor independence for the quality of audits; conflicts of interest, and the compromise to auditor independence, raised by accounting firms' increased offering of consulting services to audit clients; the completeness of corporate disclosure in SEC filings and shareholder communications; conflicts of interest among securities underwriters and affiliated stock analysts; insider abuses; corporate responsibility; and the adequacy of resources available to the Securities and Exchange Commission to meet its responsibilities.

On February 12, 2002, the Committee heard from a panel of five former Chairmen of the Securities and Exchange Commission: Roderick M. Hills, Chairman, 1975-77; Harold M. Williams, Chairman, *3 1977-81; David Ruder, Chairman, 1987-89; Richard C. Breeden, Chairman, 1989-93; and Arthur Levitt, Jr., Chairman, 1993-2000. [FN1] On February 14, 2002, Paul Volcker, Chairman of the Trustees of the International Accounting Standards Committee, and former Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and Sir David Tweedie, Chairman of the International Accounting Standards Board, and former Chairman of the United Kingdom's Accounting Standards Board, appeared before the Committee to discuss "International Accounting Standards and Necessary Reforms to Improve Financial Reporting."

On February 26, 2002, a panel of three former Chief Accountants of the Securities and Exchange Commission and a former Chairman of the Financial Accounting Standards Board testified on "Oversight of the Accounting Profession, Audit Quality and Independence, and Formulation of Accounting Principles." The witnesses were Walter P. Schuetze, Chief Accountant, 1992-95; Michael H. Sutton, Chief Accountant, 1995-98; Lynn E. Turner, Chief Accountant, 1998-2001; and Dennis R. Beresford, Chairman, Financial Accounting Standards Board, 1987-97.

On February 27, 2002, the Committee heard testimony on "Corporate Governance" from John H. Biggs, Chairman, President, and Chief Executive Officer, Teachers' Insurance and Annuity Association-College Retirement Equities Fund (TIAA CREF), and former member of the Public Oversight Board; and Ira M. Millstein, Senior

S. REP Case 1207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page \$4675

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Partner, Weil, Gotshal & Manges LLP, and Co-Chair of the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees.

On March 5, 2002, the Committee heard from David M. Walker, Comptroller General of the United States; as well as Robert Glauber, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc., and former Under Secretary for Finance, Department of Treasury, under President Bush (1989-1992); Joel Seligman, Dean and Ethan A. H. Shepley University Professor, Washington University School of Law; and John C. Coffee, Jr., Adolf A. Berle Professor of Law, Columbia University Law School.

On March 6, 2002, the Committee heard testimony on "Oversight of the Accounting Profession, Audit Quality and Independence, and Formulation of Accounting Principles" from Shaun O'Malley, Chairman, 2000 Public Oversight Board Panel on Audit Effectiveness, and former Chairman, Price Waterhouse LLP; Lee Seidler, Deputy Chairman, 1978 American Institute of Certified Public Accountants ("AICPA") Commission on Auditors' Responsibilities, and Managing Director Emeritus, Bear Stearns & Co.; Arthur R. Wyatt, former President, American Accounting Association, and Professor of Accountancy Emeritus, University of Illinois; Abraham Briloff, Emanuel Saxe Distinguished Professor Emeritus, Baruch College, City University of New York; and Bevis Longstreth, Member, 2000 Public Oversight Board Panel on Audit Effectiveness, and former Commissioner, Securities and Exchange Commission (1981-84).

On March 14, 2002, the Committee heard from representatives of the accounting industry, the American Enterprise Institute, and The Brookings Institution. The witnesses were James G. Castellano, Chairman, AICPA, and Managing Partner, Rubin, *4 Brown, Gornstein & Co. LLP; James S. Gerson, Chairman, Auditing Standards Board, AICPA, and Partner, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP; William Balhoff, Chairman, AICPA Private Company Practice Section; Olivia F. Kirtley, former Chair, AICPA; James E. Copeland, Jr., Chief Executive Officer, Deloitte & Touche LLP; Peter J. Wallison, Resident Fellow and Co-Director, Financial Deregulation Project, American Enterprise Institute; and Robert E. Litan, Director, Economic Studies Program, The Brookings Institution.

On March 19, 2002, the Committee heard from two members of the recently-disbanded Public Oversight Board ("P.O.B."): Charles A. Bowsher, former Comptroller General of the United States, who was the P.O.B.'s Chairman; and Aulana L. Peters, former Commissioner, Securities and Exchange Commission (1984-88), who was a member of the P.O.B.; as well as from L. William Seidman, former Chairman, Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation and Resolution Trust Corporation, and former Partner, Seidman & Seidman; John C. Whitehead, former Co-Chairman, Goldman Sachs & Co., Co-Chair of the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees, and former Deputy Secretary of State (1985-89); and Michael Mayo, Managing Director, Prudential Securities, Inc.

On March 20, 2002, the Committee heard from a variety of interested parties including Thomas A. Bowman, President and Chief Executive Officer, Association for Investment Management and Research; Howard M. Metzenbaum, Chairman, Consumer Federation of America, and former U.S. Senator; Damon Silvers, Associate General Counsel, AFL-CIO; and Sarah Teslik, Executive Director, Council of Institutional

S. REP CASO 1207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 645 T

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Investors.

On March 21, 2002, the Committee heard testimony from Harvey L. Pitt, Chairman, Securities and Exchange Commission.

TITLE-BY-TITLE SUMMARY OF MAJOR PROVISIONS

TITLE I-PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD

Title I of the bill creates a Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (the "Board"), to provide for more effective oversight of the part of the nation's accounting industry that audits public companies. Title I reflects significant portions of S. 2004, authored by Senators Dodd and Corzine, as well as the terms of an amendment offered at the Committee's June 18 mark-up by Senator Enzi, which was adopted by voice vote.

The new Board may, subject to review by the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC" or the "Commission"), establish, adopt, or modify auditing, quality control, ethics, and independence standards for public company audits, inspect accounting firms, investigate potential violations of applicable rules relating to audits, and impose sanctions if those violations are established. The Board will have authority only with respect to audits of public companies. It has no jurisdiction over the work of accountants in auditing other companies.

The Board will bring together various issues and responsibilities that have in the past been subject to what one Committee witness *5 characterized as " a bewildering array of monitoring groups" [FN2] under the auspices of the accounting profession. As Shaun O'Malley, Chairman of the 2000 Panel on Audit Effectiveness (and former Chairman of Price Waterhouse LLP), explained to the Committee in greater detail:

The profession's combination of public oversight and voluntary self-regulation is extensive, Byzantine, and insufficient. The Panel found that the current system of governance lacks sufficient public representation, suffers from divergent views among its members as to the profession's priorities, implements a disciplinary system that is slow and ineffective, lacks efficient communication among its various entities and with the SEC, and lacks unified leadership and oversight. [FN3]

Twenty witnesses who appeared before the Committee in its ten days of hearings on accounting reform and investor protection stressed the need for a strong Board to oversee the auditors of public companies. Paul Volcker, the former Chairman of the Federal Reserve Board, told the Committee that:

[o]ver the years, there have also [i.e., in addition to the SEC] been repeated efforts to provide oversight by industry or industry/public member boards. By and large, I think we have to conclude that those efforts at self-regulation have been unsatisfactory. Thus, experience strongly suggests that governmental oversight, with investigation and enforcement powers, is necessary to assure discipline. [FN4]

Charles W. Bowsher, the Comptroller General of the United States from 1981-1996 and the last Chairman of the Public Oversight Board (P.O.B.), [FN5] as well as former SEC Commissioner Aulana Peters and John Biggs, who were also members of the P.O.B., made the same recommendation when they testified before the

s. REP Cqse 1207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page դգք 7 դ

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Committee. [FN6] They were also among the number of witnesses who emphasized that any Board must be created by statute to establish its authority properly and firmly.

The concerns of the Committee extend beyond immediate allegations of wrongdoing, to the fundamental principles on which the functioning of free markets and the protection of investors are based. Each of the country's federal securities lawsthe 1933, *6 1934, 1935, and 1940 Acts-requires comprehensive financial statements that must be prepared, in the words of the Securities Act of 1933, by "an independent public or certified accountant." [FN7] Professor Benjamin Graham's seminal textbook for securities analysts explains why:

Prior to the SEC legislation * * * it was by no means unusual to encounter semi-fraudulent distortions of corporate accounts * * * almost always for the purpose of making the results look better than they were, and it was generally associated with some scheme of stock-market manipulation in which the management was participating. [FN8]

However, the franchise given to public accountants by the securities laws is conditional; it comes in return for the CPA's faithful assumption of a public trust. (The Supreme Court's now-classic statement of that trust, in United States v. Arthur Young, 465 U.S.C. 805 (1984) is discussed below.) The testimony heard by the Committee repeatedly indicated that a number of forces have undermined the fulfillment of this public trust over the years. Lee Seidler, Deputy Chairman of a 1978 commission organized to review "auditors' responsibilities," told the Committee that, twenty-five years ago, that commission had found a gap between the reasonable expectations of users of financial statements and the performance of auditors that has not improved since. He continued:

in 1978 [the commission] also said: the public accounting profession has failed to react and evolve rapidly enough to keep pace with the speed of change in the American business environment. And unfortunately, a quarter of a century later, I have to repeat that. It's identical. [FN9]

A. Appointment and operation of board

The successful operation of the Board depends upon its independence and professionalism. The Board will have five members, each of whom must have a demonstrated commitment to the interests of investors, as well as an understanding of the financial disclosures required of public companies, and the responsibilities for those disclosures, under the federal securities laws. Three members of the Board will have a general background, and two members will have an accountancy background. [FN10] (The Board's Chairperson may have an accountancy background, but if so, he or she may not have been a practicing accountant for at least five years prior to appointment to the Board.)

Board members are to be appointed by the SEC after consultation with the Federal Reserve Board and the Department of the Treasury. They will serve full-time, for five-year (staggered) terms, with a two-term limit. To further assure their independence, Board members may engage in no other business activities of any nature, *7 or receive any payments from any accounting firms (except for standard retirement payments) or other persons. In addition, former Board members will be subject

S. REP C 489 1207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page & af 718

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

to a one-year "cooling off" period at the end of their Board service, during which time they may not work for an accounting firm registered with the Board.

It is essential that the Board have a strong, well-trained, and experienced staff, of sufficient size to carry out its responsibilities. A number of witnesses emphasized, for example, that inspections must no longer be left to "peer reviews" of one accounting firm by another. [FN11] The bill makes it plain, as the Committee intends, that the Board is to provide for staff salaries that are fully competitive with those for comparable private-sector self-regulatory, accounting, technical, supervisory, or related staff or management positions. [FN12]

Prompt Action is Essential. The Committee believes that the new oversight arrangements must come into effect quickly. The SEC is to appoint the initial Board within three months of the bill's enactment, so that the Board can take the steps necessary to begin its operation within six months of its appointment, and the registration of accounting firms (below) can be completed within six months after the Board begins operation.

B. Registration of accounting firms

Accounting firms that audit public companies must register with the Board, no later than six months after the SEC determines that the Board is ready to begin operation. It is unlawful for a firm that has not registered to continue to audit public companies.

Conditioning eligibility to audit public companies on registration with the Board is the linchpin of the Board's authority. Suspension or revocation of registration renders a firm unable to continue its public company audit practice.

As part of its registration process, each accounting firm must execute a consent to comply with any requests, within the Board's authority, for documents or testimony made in the course of the Board's operation. The firm must also agree to obtain (and ultimately, if necessary, to enforce) similar consents from the firm's partners and employees, who are subject to the Board's investigative and disciplinary jurisdiction.

Certain necessary information is to accompany the registration materials (including a list of the firm's accountants who perform public company audits), and the Board will determine within 45 days of receipt whether an application is complete and the applicant can be registered. Basic registration information is to be public, but each accounting firm may protect from public disclosure information that it reasonably identifies as proprietary or that is otherwise *8 protected by law. Each registrant is to file a report annually to update the required information.

The Board is to assess a registration fee, and an annual fee, to recover the costs of processing and reviewing applications and annual reports.

C. Auditing, quality control, ethics, and independence standards and rules

The bill requires the Board to establish or adopt auditing, quality control, and ethics standards for the audit of public companies. The Committee has concluded that the Board's plenary authority in this area is essential for the Board's ef-

S. REP Case 1207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page \$ af 7 5

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

fective operation, a position taken during the hearings by a number of witnesses, including former SEC Chairman Levitt, former Comptroller General Bowsher, and former FDIC Chairman Seidman (himself once a principal of a substantial accounting firm). [FN13]

The Board's standard-setting authority, however, is neither intended nor structured to exclude practicing accountants from participation in the standard-setting process. The Board may adopt as part of its rules (and modify as appropriate for that purpose, at the time of adoption or thereafter), any portion of a statement of auditing, quality control, or ethics standards that meets the bill's statutory tests and that is proposed (i) by a professional group of accountants (designated by a rule of the Board for that purpose), or (ii) by one or more advisory groups of practicing accountants or other interested parties convened by the Board. (Pre-existing standards of designated professional groups of accountants may be adopted during the Board's transitional period.) The Board is to cooperate on an ongoing basis with the designated professional groups of accountants noted above, with its own advisory groups, and with other interested groups (and the accounting profession and the investing public at large), in examining the need for changes in any standards subject to Board authority. It is to recommend issues for inclusion on the agendas of these groups, take other steps to facilitate the standardsetting process, and respond in a timely fashion to requests for changes in the standards. Finally, rules are open to comment by accountants and any other interested persons in a public process before they are approved either by the Board or, ultimately, by the SEC. Many of these provisions were suggested by Senator Enzi.

Particular Standards Required by the Bill. Although the Board's power to establish or adopt auditing and related standards extends to the full range of those standards, the bill specifies certain provisions that must be part of the standards. These include (i) preparation, and maintenance for at least seven years, by public company auditors of audit work papers and related information in sufficient detail to support each audit's conclusions, (ii) "second partner" review and approval of each public company audit report and its issuance, and (iii) inclusion in each audit report of a description of the auditor's testing of the public company's systems for compliance with the requirements of section 13(b)(2) of the Securities Exchange *9 Act and of the company's controls over its receipts and expenditures, together with specific notation of any significant defects or material noncompliance of which the auditor should know on the basis of such testing. In addition, the quality control standards adopted by the Board must address an accounting firm's monitoring of ethics and independence; internal and external consulting on audit issues; audit supervision; hiring, development, and advancement of audit personnel; acceptance and continuance of engagements; and internal inspection.

Auditor Independence. The Board is also authorized to issue rules to implement the provisions of title II of the bill relating to auditor independence. That authority is discussed in greater detail in connection with title II, below.

D. Inspections of registered accounting firms

Virtually every witness who addressed the details of auditor oversight agreed on

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 10-9f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

the critical need for a regular and comprehensive review, by an independent body of inspectors, of each audit firm's compliance with audit standards and procedures. A program of inspections is essential to identify problems in firm procedures, training, and "culture" before those problems can produce audit failures that trigger large investor losses and threaten confidence in the capital markets. [FN14]

The Board is to inspect the operations of each registered accounting firm, in order to assess compliance of that firm, and of its partners and employees, with the new statute, the Board's rules, and professional accounting standards. Initially, firms that audit more than 100 public companies are to be inspected each year, and firms that audit 100 or fewer public companies are to be inspected at least every three years. The Board is given the power to adjust these inspection schedules if it finds different schedules to be consistent with the bill's purposes, the protection of investors, and the public interest.

During an inspection, the Board is to review particular audit engagements (that it selects) of a firm and the firm's general quality control systems and policies, as well as to perform such other testing of the firm's audit, supervisory, and quality control procedures as is necessary or appropriate. The Board is specifically given authority to require firms to retain their records for inspection purposes regardless of whether retention of those records is otherwise required.

After each inspection, the Board will prepare an inspection report, which will be available for comment in draft form by the firm under inspection. Quality control defects found by the Board may be disposed of simply by corrective action, but specific violations identified during inspections may form the basis for a more formal investigation or disciplinary action by the Board and are to be reported, if appropriate, to the SEC and relevant state accountancy boards; final inspection reports are to be sent to the SEC and relevant state accountancy boards in any event. The reports will also be made public, subject to appropriate protection of confidential or proprietary information. However, firms will be given 12 months to *10 correct defects in their quality control systems, to the satisfaction of the Board, before portions of the reports dealing with those defects are added to the public record. [FN15]

E. Investigations and disciplinary proceedings

Committee witnesses stressed that the Board must possess investigative and disciplinary authority. Arthur Levitt, who served as Chairman of the SEC during most of the 1990s, told the Committee that:

We need a truly independent oversight body that has the power not only to set the standards by which audits are performed, but also to conduct timely investigations that cannot be deferred for any reason and to discipline accountants. [FN16]

Robert Glauber, the Chairman and CEO of the National Association of Securities Dealers, explained that:

Any form of private-sector regulation must be empowered to effectively enforce the rules: [it must possess] the ability to levy meaningful fines, place conditions on continued participation in the industry, suspend, and where appropriate, banish those who misbehave from the industry. This "ultimate sanction" is both a

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 11gef 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

powerful deterrent for would-be violators and an important investor protection. [FN17]

In response, the bill grants the Board broad authority to investigate any act or practice, or omission, by a registered accounting firm, or its associated persons, that may violate the new statute, the Board's rules, professional accounting standards, or the portions of the Federal securities laws (and SEC rules) relating to the preparation and issuance of audit reports and the obligations and liabilities of accountants with respect to those reports.

The Board's rules are to prescribe fair investigative and disciplinary procedures. It may, under those rules, require testimony or the production of audit work papers and other documents from (and may inspect the records of) registered firms or their associated persons, and it may suspend or revoke the registration of a firm, or suspend or bar from further association with a firm an "associated person," for non-cooperation with a Board investigation, subject to review of that action by the SEC. [FN18]

Committee witnesses also emphasized that information gathered by Board investigators should be "privileged from outsiders" during the investigative process. Under the bill, any information gathered in the course of an investigation is to be confidential and privileged for all purposes (including civil discovery), unless and until particular information is presented in connection with a public proceeding. However, the Board may disclose investigative information, if it determines that such disclosure is "necessary to accomplish the purposes of the Act or to protect investors," to the SEC, *11 any federal financial supervisor (if the investigation pertains to an institution under the latter's supervision), the Attorney General, and, with the SEC's permission, to state attorneys general, in connection with criminal investigations, or state accountancy boards. (The Board may also refer an investigation to the SEC or other agencies to which disclosure of information is permitted.)

A full range of sanctions is available if the Board finds that a registered firm (or its partners or employees) has violated one or more of the rules within the Board's investigative jurisdiction. Potential sanctions include revocation or suspension of an accounting firm's registration, or of the ability of particular individuals to remain associated with that firm or become associated with any other registered accounting firm (effectively barring the subject of the sanction from participating in audits of public companies), substantial civil money penalties, [FN19] required professional education or training, and censure; the breadth of these sanctions is intended to encourage flexible and appropriate action, designed to correct if possible. The Board's ability to suspend or bar an associated person from the auditing of public companies, and its ability to impose civil money penalties above a certain amount, is limited to situations involving intentional, knowing, or reckless conduct, or repeated negligent conduct.

An important provision of the bill permits the Board to impose sanctions upon a registered accounting firm for failure reasonably to supervise a partner or employee who is found to have violated applicable rules. The terms for liability for failure to supervise are similar to those that apply to broker-dealers under section 15(b)(4) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; they permit an accounting

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 12/9 of 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

firm to defend itself from supervisory liability by showing that its internal control procedures were reasonable and were operating fully in the situation at issue.

The Board's determination that a violation has occurred and that a sanction should be imposed may be appealed to the Commission (as described below). Disciplinary sanctions must be reported to the Commission, appropriate state or foreign boards of accountancy, and the public (once any stay of enforcement pending appeal has been lifted).

F. Foreign public accounting firms

Companies that sell shares to U.S. investors, and are subject to the federal securities laws, can be organized and operate in any part of the world. Their financial statements are not necessarily audited by U.S. accounting firms, and the Committee believes that there should be no difference in treatment of a public company's auditors under the bill simply because of a particular auditor's place of operation. Otherwise, a significant loophole in the protection offered U.S. investors would be built into the statutory system.

Thus, accounting firms organized under the laws of countries other than the United States that issue audit reports for public companies subject to the U.S. securities laws are covered by the bill in the same manner as domestic accounting firms, subject to the exemptive authority of both the Board and the SEC. (Registration *12 under the bill will not in itself provide a basis for subjecting a foreign accounting firm to U.S. jurisdiction other than with respect to controversies between such a firm and the Board.) The Board is also authorized to determine that other foreign accounting firms play a sufficiently substantial role in the preparation and furnishing of such reports for particular issuers that their coverage under the bill is necessary or appropriate to protect investors and the public interest.

Finally, the bill sets terms for the production in the United States by a foreign public accounting firm of its audit work papers, for any audit in which the foreign accounting firm issues an opinion or otherwise performs material services upon which an accounting firm registered under the bill relies in issuing all or part of a public company audit report. The foreign firm is deemed, by performing such work, to have consented to production, and the domestic accounting firm that relies on the foreign accounting firm's work must have secured, as a condition of its reliance, the foreign firm's agreement to the production.

G. SEC oversight of the Board

The Board is subject to SEC oversight and review to assure that the Board's policies are consistent with the administration of the federal securities laws, and to protect the rights of accounting firms and individuals subject to the Board's jurisdiction. Oversight also allows the public an important forum for commenting on Board rules relating to auditing, quality control, and related standards.

The rules for SEC oversight of the Board are generally the same as those that

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 13-9 f 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

apply to SEC oversight of the National Association of Securities Dealers, under section 19 of the Securities Exchange Act. Thus, the Board's proposed rules will be filed with the SEC and published by the SEC for public comment; SEC approval is necessary in most cases before rules of the Board take effect, and the SEC may itself abrogate or amend Board rules (as well as disapprove proposed Board rules). (Transitional rules are to be separately approved by the SEC at the time of the SEC's determination that the Board is ready to begin operation.) Disciplinary sanctions imposed by the Board are subject to SEC review and may be canceled or modified (or in some cases enhanced) by the SEC. The SEC can relieve the Board of any responsibility to enforce any provision of the bill, or censure or limit operations of the Board, or remove a Board member, for cause. Finally, the bill makes clear that any violations of its terms will constitute a violation of the Securities Exchange Act itself for purposes of the SEC's enforcement (including injunctive and cease-and-desist) authority under that Act, so that the SEC may proceed under the bill's provisions directly if appropriate.

H. Accounting principles

Since 1973, the SEC has generally required public companies operating in the United States to prepare their financial statements in accordance with "principles, standards, and practices" promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (the "FASB") in the absence of specific SEC pronouncements on particular accounting *13 questions. [FN20] The bill seeks to formalize the SEC's reliance on the FASB and, as discussed below, to strengthen the independence of the FASB by assuring its funding and eliminating any need for it to seek contributions from accounting firms or companies whose financial statements must conform to FASB's rules. Thus, the bill amends the Securities Act of 1933 specifically to allow the SEC to recognize as "generally accepted" (for securities law purposes) accounting principles established by a private entity that is funded as outlined in the bill (described below) and that has adopted procedures (including acting by majority vote) to ensure prompt consideration of necessary changes to the body of accounting principles.

An important issue presented to the Committee was the potential difference between an accounting regime that contains detailed rules for the treatment of particular items, and a regime that simply outlines general concepts (or "principles") to be applied to particular items. Witnesses noted the possibility that the overly-detailed approach of U.S. standard-setters may have delayed updating of necessary guidance and at the same time drawn the focus of auditors away from the overriding principle that a set of financial statements, taken as a whole, must fairly and completely reflect the economic results and operations of the company being audited. To allow more careful consideration of the differences between various formulations of accounting standards, the bill requires the Commission to conduct a study, within 12 months, of the adoption by the U.S. financial reporting system of a principles-based accounting system.

I. Funding

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 14-92 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

The Committee's witnesses overwhelmingly agreed that both the Board and the FASB required guaranteed sources of funding, in order to protect their independence. Several witnesses testified to the problems various attempts at oversight of auditors had encountered when voluntary funding was withheld. With respect to the FASB, Michael Sutton, a former SEC Chief Accountant, testified to the Committee that "[t]o restore confidence in our standards setters, we should take immediate steps to secure independent funding for the FASB-funding that does not depend on contributions from constituents that have a stake in the outcome of the process." [FN21]

Under the bill, public companies are required to pay "accounting support fees" to support the annual budgets of the Board and the FASB. (The Board's budget will be subject to approval by the SEC.) Amounts payable by public companies to either body will generally be allocated among those companies based on relative average annual monthly market capitalization for the 12 months prior to the year to which the support fee relates; both the Board and the FASB are permitted to differentiate among various classes of public companies in allocating fees.

*14 TITLE II-AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE

The issue of auditor independence is at the center of this legislation. Public confidence in the integrity of financial statements of publicly-traded companies is based on belief in the independence of the auditor from the audit client. As noted above, each of the country's federal securities laws requires comprehensive financial statements that must be prepared, in the words of the Securities Act of 1933, by "an independent public or certified accountant."

The statutory independent audit requirement has two sides. It grants a franchise to the nation's public accountants-their services, and only their services, and certification, must be secured before an issuer of securities can go to market, have the securities listed on the nation's stock exchanges, or comply with the reporting requirements of the securities laws. This is a source of significant private benefit to the public accountants.

But the franchise is conditional. It comes in return for the CPA's assumption of a public duty and obligation. As a unanimous Supreme Court noted nearly 20 years ago: "In certifying the public reports that collectively depict a corporation's financial status, the independent auditor assumes a public responsibility. * * * [That auditor] owes ultimate allegiance to the corporation's creditors and stockholders, as well as to the investing public. This 'public watchdog' function demands that the accountant maintain total independence from the client at all times and requires complete fidelity to the public trust." United States v. Arthur Young, 465 U.S. 805, 817-18 (1984) (emphasis added).

Richard Breeden, Chairman of the SEC from 1989-93, put it succinctly in testimony before the Committee:

While companies in the U.S. do not have to employ a law firm, an underwriter, or other types of professionals, federal law requires a publicly-traded company to hire an independent accounting firm to perform an annual audit. In addition to this shared federal monopoly, more than a hundred million investors in the U.S. depend on audited financial statements to make investment decisions. This imbues

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 1590f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

accounting firms with a high level of public trust, and also explains why there is a strong federal interest in how well the accounting system functions. [FN22]

There is arguably an inherent conflict in the fact that an auditor is paid by the company for which the audit is being performed. That conflict is implicit in the relationship between the auditor and the audit client. In the last 15 years, however, the rapid growth in management consulting services offered by the major accounting firms has created a second, more substantial conflict that has eroded the independence that the auditor must bring to the audit function.

According to the SEC, 55 percent of the average revenue of the big five accounting firms came from accounting and auditing services in 1988. Twenty-two percent of the average revenue came from management consulting services. By 1999, those figures had fallen to 31 percent for accounting and auditing services, and risen to 50 *15 percent for management consulting services. Recent data reported to the SEC showed on average public accounting firms' non-audit fees comprised 73 percent of their total fees, or \$2.69 in non-audit fees for every \$1.00 in audit fees. At the same time, the frequency of financial restatements by public companies has dramatically increased. From 1990-97, the number of public company financial restatements averaged 49 per year, but jumped to an average of 150 per year in 1999 and 2000.

For these reasons, the bill includes a number of provisions directed to the issue of auditor independence.

A. Services outside the scope of practice of auditors

A number of the witnesses who testified before the Committee during the course of the hearings, as well as other informed observers, argued that the growth in the non-audit consulting business done by the large accounting firms for their audit clients has so compromised the independence of the audits that a complete prohibition is required on the provision of consulting services by accounting firms to their audit clients.

Perhaps the strongest advocates of this view have been the managers of large pension funds who are entrusted with people's retirement savings. James E. Burton, Chief Executive Officer of the California Public Employees' Retirement System (CalPERS), which manages pension and health benefits for more than 1.3 million members with aggregate holdings totaling almost \$150 billion, has stated: "We believe that the inherent conflicts created when an external auditor is simultaneously receiving fees from a company for non-audit work cannot be remedied by anything less than a bright-line ban. An accounting firm should be an auditor or a consultant, but not both to the same client." [FN23]

John Biggs is Chairman of Teachers Insurance and Annuity Association-College Retirement Equities Fund (TIAA-CREF), the largest private pension system in the world providing pensions and other financial products to the education and research community. TIAA-CREF manages approximately \$275 billion in pension assets for over 2 million participants. Mr. Biggs has stated:

Another critical element in reforming audit practices is a bright line division between audit and consulting functions. We believe such separation will help restore public trust in corporate financial statements. For example, TIAA-CREF

S. REPCase71;07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 16-9f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

does not allow our public audit firm to provide any consulting services to us, and our policy even bars our auditor from providing tax services. * *

Our long-term policy has served us well in assuring the independence of our auditors. Because auditors owe their primary duty to the shareholders, questions about the primacy of that duty are raised if the audit firm provides other, potentially more lucrative, consulting services to the company. The board and the public auditor should both see to it that, in fact as well as in appearance, the auditor reports to the independent board audit committee and acts on behalf of shareholders. The key reason why awarding *16 consulting contracts and other non-audit work to the audit firm is troubling is because it results in conflicting loyalties. While the board's audit committee is formally responsible for hiring and firing the outside auditor, management controls virtually all the other types of non-audit work the audit firm may do for the company. Those contracts with management blur the reporting relationship-it is difficult to believe that auditors do not feel pressure for the overall success of their firm with the client. Even their own compensation packages may be tied to consulting and non-audit services being provided by their firm to the company. * *

Congress has a clear mandate from the shareholders and the general public to act strongly and swiftly. By requiring public companies to use different accounting firms for their audit and consulting services and by establishing an independent board with real authority to oversee the accounting profession you will be taking important steps toward reversing the crisis of confidence in financial markets that exists today. [FN24]

In addition, respected former corporate leaders and former public officials endorsed this approach. For example, John Whitehead, former Co-Chairman of Goldman Sachs and former Co-Chairman of the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees, told the Committee:

I have reached the conclusion that the accounting firm that does the audit should not do other advisory work for the company. Without that, the independence of the auditor's work will always be suspect. I reach that decision reluctantly but I don't see that it is possible to restore public confidence in the independence of the auditors without it. [FN25]

Walter Schuetze, a former SEC Chief Accountant (who is also a former Big 8 accounting firm partner and an original member of the FASB), stated, "I would support a complete separation and allow the audit firm to provide only audit services to the audit client. No other services whatsoever." [FN26] Former SEC Chairman Harold Williams also suggested that a complete ban on consulting services be considered for audit clients of accounting firms. [FN27]

The Committee considered adopting a complete prohibition on non-audit services by accounting firms for their audit clients, but instead decided on a somewhat more flexible approach. The approach adopted by the Committee is supported by former Comptroller General Bowsher, former SEC Chairman Arthur Levitt, and former Federal Reserve Board Chairman Paul Volcker. [FN28]

*17 The bill provides that it shall be unlawful for a public accounting firm registered with the Board which performs an audit for a public company to provide, contemporaneously with the audit, the following non-audit services:

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 17-9 f 7-1

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

- (1) bookkeeping or other services related to the accounting records or financial statements of the audit client;
 - (2) financial information systems design and implementation;
- (3) appraisal or valuation services, fairness opinions, or contribution-in-kind reports;
 - (4) actuarial services;
 - (5) internal audit outsourcing services;
 - (6) management functions or human resources;
 - (7) broker or dealer, investment adviser, or investment banking services;
 - (8) legal services and expert services unrelated to the audit; and
- (9) any other services that the Board determines, by regulation, is impermissible.

The Board may, on a case-by-case basis, exempt any person, issuer, public accounting firm, or transaction from the prohibition on the provision of non-audit services to the extent that such exemption is necessary or appropriate in the public interest and is consistent with the protection of investors. A registered public accounting firm may engage in any non-audit service, including tax services, that is not on the list for an audit client only if the activity is approved in advance by the audit committee of the issuer. No limitations are placed on accounting firms in providing non-audit services to public companies which they do not audit or to any non-public companies.

The need for this provision was clearly stated by David M. Walker, Comptroller General of the United States, in a statement he released on June 18, in which he said:

I believe that legislation that will provide a framework and guidance for the SEC to use in setting independence standards for public company audits is needed. History has shown that the AICPA [American Institute of Certified Public Accountants] and the SEC have failed to update their independence standards in a timely fashion and that past updates have not adequately protected the public's interests. In addition, the accounting profession has placed too much emphasis on growing non-audit fees and not enough emphasis on modernizing the auditing profession for the 21st century environment. Congress is the proper body to promulgate a framework for the SEC to use in connection with independence related regulatory and enforcement actions in order to help ensure confidence in financial reporting and safeguard investors and the public's interests.

The independence provision [of the bill] * * * strikes a reasoned and reasonable balance that will enable auditors to perform a range of non-audit services for their audit clients and an unlimited range of non-audit services for their non-audit clients. Most importantly, the proposed legislation adopts a "principle based" and "substance over form" approach that can stand the test of time and, if adopted, *18 will better protect the public's interests. In my opinion, the time to act on independence legislation is now. [FN29]

Some argue that standards for auditor independence should be left to the SEC and the new Board. The approach adopted by the bill reflects the Committee's belief that the issue of auditor independence is so fundamental to the problems currently being experienced in our financial markets that statutory standards are needed to

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 1890f 78

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

assure the independence of the auditor from the audit client.

The intention of this provision is to draw a clear line around a limited list of non-audit services that accounting firms may not provide to public company audit clients because their doing so creates a fundamental conflict of interest for the accounting firms. The list is based on simple principles. An accounting firm, in order to be independent of its audit client, should not audit its own work, which would be involved in providing bookkeeping services, financial information systems design, appraisal or valuation services, actuarial services, and internal audit outsourcing services to an audit client. The accounting firm should not function as part of management or as an employee of the audit client, which would be required if the accounting firm provides human resources services such as recruiting, hiring, and designing compensation packages for the officers, directors, and managers of an audit client. The accounting firm should not act as an advocate of the audit client, which would be involved in providing legal and expert services to an audit client in legal, administrative, or regulatory proceedings, or serving as a broker-dealer, investment adviser, or investment banker to an audit client, which places the auditor in the role of promoting a client's stock or other interests.

The accounting industry itself has announced voluntarily that it will not provide two of these non-audit services-internal audit services and financial information systems design and implementation-to public company audit clients because of the conflicts they present. The other prohibited non-audit services also pose clear conflicts of interest for accounting firms when provided for audit clients. For example, in its oversight hearing earlier this year on the failure of Superior Bank, FSB, in Hinsdale, Illinois, the Committee learned first-hand the risks associated with allowing accounting firms to audit their own work. [FN30] In that case, the accounting firm audited and certified a valuation of risky residual assets calculated according to a methodology it had provided as a consultant. The valuation was excessive and led to the failure of the institution.

The Board is given authority to make case-by-case exemptions in instances where the Board believes an exemption is in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors. Further, no limitations are placed on accounting firms in providing non-audit services to public companies that they do not audit or to any private companies. The purpose is to assure the independence of the audit, not to put an end to the provision of non-audit services by accounting firms.

*19 In summary, the bill adopts a strong, balanced approach to assure that in return for the significant private benefits conferred on accounting firms by our securities laws, they maintain their independence from the companies they audit and fulfill their "public trust."

B. Audit committee pre-approval of audit and non-audit services

The legislation requires that audit services, as well as non-audit services other than those proscribed by the bill, must be pre-approved by the audit committee of the public company's board of directors. The Committee heard testimony on the role that the audit committee of a public company should play in connection with the engagement of an auditor to provide audit and non-audit services contemporan-

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 1996 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

eously. Michael Sutton, former Chief Accountant of the SEC, said, "Whatever non-audit services might be permitted, I think they should be permitted only with the approval of the audit committee." [FN31] Former SEC Commissioner Bevis Longstreth told the Committee:

I suggest a simple exclusionary rule covering virtually all non-audit services, in place of the deeply complex, existing rule that I hope, by now, to have convinced you is ineffective. This rule would redefine the category of services to be barred as including everything other than the work involved in performing an audit and other work that is integral to the function of the audit. Use of such an exception should require at least the following: (a) Before any such service is rendered, a finding by the client's audit committee that special circumstances make it obvious that the best interests of the company and its shareholders will be served by retaining its audit firm to render such service and that no other vendor of such service can serve those interests as well; (b) Forthwith upon the making of such a finding, submission of a written copy thereof to the SEC and the SRO having jurisdiction over the profession; and (c) In the company's next proxy statement for election of directors, disclosure of such finding by the audit committee and the amount paid and expected to be paid to the auditor for such service. [FN32]

After studying this issue, the Committee believes the protection of investors warrants a requirement that a public company's audit committee approve in advance the services that the auditor will provide to such company (if those services are not explicitly prohibited under the bill). Accordingly, the bill requires the audit committee of a public company to pre-approve all of the services, both audit and non-audit, provided to that company by a registered public accounting firm. The bill does not require an issuer's audit committee to pre-approve non-audit services provided by an accounting firm that is not auditing the issuer.

The bill does not require the audit committee to make a particular finding in order to pre-approve an activity. The members of the audit committee shall vote consistent with the standards they *20 determine to be appropriate in light of their fiduciary responsibilities and such other considerations they deem to be relevant.

The audit committee must pre-approve a non-audit service before it commences. The audit committee may pre-approve at any time in advance of the activity. For example, an audit committee may grant pre-approval at its March meeting for a non-audit service that would begin in August. However, the Commission or the Board under its general authority may specify a maximum period of time in advance of which the approval may not be granted, such as, for example, requiring the pre-approval to be granted no earlier than one year prior to the commencement of the service.

The bill does not limit the number of non-audit services that the audit committee may pre-approve at one meeting or occasion. The Committee intends, however, that each non-audit service be specifically identified in order to be approved by the audit committee. The Committee does not intend for the statutory requirement to be satisfied by an audit committee voting, for example, to permit "any service that management determines appropriate for the auditor to perform" or "all non-audit services permissible under law."

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 20-0f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

The Committee has chosen to offer audit committees a delegation option in their administration of the pre-approval requirement. The bill permits the audit committee to delegate to one or more of its members (who are members of the board of directors) the authority to pre-approve non-audit services. After a delegated member has granted a pre-approval, he or she is required to report the decision at the next meeting of the full audit committee. This delegation of authority may be useful where, for example, the audit committee is asked to determine whether or not to permit the issuer's auditor to perform a new non-audit service within a short period of time.

The Committee has taken into account the atypical circumstance where an auditor is providing to the issuer a service that was anticipated to be an audit service within the scope of the engagement, but is later discovered to be a non-audit service. The bill provides that the pre-approval requirement is waived with respect to a non-audit service if: (1) the service was not recognized by the issuer at the time of the audit engagement to be a non-audit service, (2) the aggregate amount paid for all services described in (1) is not more than 5 percent of the total amount of revenues paid by the issuer to the auditor, and (3) the service is promptly brought to the attention of the audit committee, and (4) the audit committee approves the activity prior to the conclusion of the audit. This postapproval may be granted by the entire audit committee or by one or more audit committee members (who are members of the board of directors) to whom authority to grant such approvals has been delegated by the audit committee. This flexibility was suggested by Senator Enzi.

The bill requires that the audit committee approvals be disclosed to investors in periodic reports filed with the Commission.

The bill specifically notes that audit services "may entail providing comfort letters in connection with securities underwriting" in order to make clear that providing such a comfort letter is an audit service.

*21 C. Audit partner rotation

The Committee heard testimony from numerous witnesses on whether, in order to maintain the objectivity of its audits, an issuer should be required to rotate its audit firm after a number of consecutive years. For example, former SEC Chairman Arthur Levitt proposed "that serious consideration be given to requiring companies to change their audit firm-not just the partners-every 5-7 years to ensure that fresh and skeptical eyes are always looking at the numbers." [FN33] Former SEC Chairman Harold Williams recommended a requirement that issuers "[h]ire auditors with a fixed term with no right to terminate for five or seven years." [FN34] John Whitehead, former Co-Chairman, Goldman Sachs & Co., recommended requiring "[t]erm limits of 8 to 10 years." [FN35] Lynn Turner, former SEC Chief Accountant, recommended requiring "mandatory rotation (5 to 7 years)." [FN36]

Other witnesses felt that accounting firm rotation could be disruptive to the issuer and that the costs of mandatory rotation might outweigh the benefits. Former SEC Chairman Rod Hills said that "[f]orcing a change of auditors can only lower the quality of audits and increase their costs." [FN37] Shaun O'Malley, Chairman, 2000 Public Oversight Board Panel on Audit Effectiveness, said that "for-

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 21-9f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

cing issuers to change auditors every few years * * * would undermine audit effectiveness." [FN38]

The Committee determined that the possibility of requiring audit firm rotation merits further study. The bill directs the U.S. General Accounting Office ("GAO") to analyze the merits and potential effects of requiring mandatory rotation of auditors, and to report its analysis to Congress within one year.

While the bill does not require issuers to rotate their accounting firms, the Committee recognizes the strong benefits that accrue for the issuer and its shareholders when a new accountant "with fresh and skeptical eyes" evaluates the issuer periodically. Accordingly, the bill requires a registered public accounting firm to rotate its lead partner and its review partner on audits so that neither role is performed by the same accountant for the same issuer for more than five consecutive years. [FN39]

D. Disclosures of accounting issues.

The Committee believes that it is important for the audit committee to be aware of key assumptions underlying a company's financial statements and of disagreements that the auditor has with management. The audit committee should be informed in a timely manner of such disagreements, so that it can independently review them and intervene if it chooses to do so in order to assure the integrity of the audit.

*22 Accordingly, the bill requires a registered independent public accounting firm performing an audit for a public company to report in a timely manner to that company's audit committee (1) the critical accounting policies and practices to be used; (2) all alternative treatments of financial information within GAAP (generally accepted accounting principles) that have been discussed with management; (3) any accounting disagreements between the auditor and management; and (4) other material written communications between the auditor and management.

E. Cooling off period

The Committee received extensive testimony on whether to impose a cooling off period between an accountant's employment by an auditor and his or her employment by an issuer. Several witnesses advocated this requirement, in order to enhance the integrity of an audit. Former Comptroller General Bowsher recommended to the Committee that "[e]ngagement and other partners who are associated with an audit should be prohibited from taking employment with the affected firm until a two-year 'cooling off' period has expired." [FN40] Lynn Turner, former SEC Chief Accountant, said, "Cooling off periods should last two years. Close the door between the audit firm, its partners and employees, and the company being audited." [FN41] Other witnesses also gave testimony that "the revolving door between audit firms and their audit clients" should be closed by enacting a cooling off period. James E. Copeland, Jr., Chief Executive Officer, Deloitte & Touche LLP, opposed a cooling off period because of concerns that it would "impose unwarranted costs on the public, the client and the profession." [FN42]

The Committee considered various options, including imposing a cooling off peri-

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 2290f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

od of one, two, or three years, and applying a cooling off period to all employees who worked for the auditor, regardless of whether they worked on the audit of a particular issuer and regardless of the position they would take with that issuer, or applying a cooling off period only to certain groups of employees.

The Committee decided to impose a one-year cooling off period that would apply to an employee of the accounting firm who worked on the issuer's audit and subsequently seeks to be employed by that issuer in a senior management capacity. Thus, the bill provides that an accounting firm may not provide audit services for a public company if that company's chief executive officer, controller, chief financial officer, chief accounting officer, or other individual serving in an equivalent position, was employed by the accounting firm during the one year before the start of the audit services. The cooling off period does not take effect if the CEO or other senior official worked for the auditor but did not work on the issuer's audit or if a member of the audit team is hired by the issuer for a position other than CEO, CFO, controller, chief accounting officer, or an equivalent position. However, if an issuer hires an accountant from the audit team as its CEO, for example, it would be required to change auditors.

*23 F. The bill does not create state regulatory standards

Titles I and II are designed to apply only to accounting firms that audit public companies. They are not designed to apply to audits of private companies. Nonetheless, some have raised the concern that the bill could lead state regulatory authorities to impose similar requirements for audits of private companies.

The bill indicates clearly that Congress does not intend that state regulatory authorities should find this Act controlling in their regulation of non-registered accountants. The bill states that it is the intention of the Act that, in supervising non-registered accounting firms, state regulatory authorities should make an independent determination of the proper standards, and should not presume the standards applied by the Board under this bill to be applicable to small- and medium-sized non-registered accounting firms. Senators Hagel and Enzi proposed this provision.

TITLE III-B CORPORATE RESPONSIBILITY

In further response to recent corporate failures, title III of the bill makes a number of changes to improve the responsibility of public companies for their financial disclosures. To that end, the bill incorporates a number of reform proposals made by the President on March 7, 2002. These reforms are supplemented with additional provisions that the Committee believes will improve investor protection in connection with the operation of public companies.

Recent events have highlighted the failure of companies' internal audit committees to properly police their auditors and have raised awareness of the need for strong, competent audit committees with real authority. Several witnesses suggested that the Committee make changes in the role of audit committees in order to enhance the audit process. In response, under the bill, the SEC must draft rules directing national securities exchanges and associations to require listed compan-

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 23-9 f 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

ies to comply with a number of enumerated provisions regarding audit committees. The Committee believes that the bill's approach to strengthening audit committees will help avoid future auditing breakdowns.

The bill also contains a number of provisions aimed at corporate management. Defects in procedures for monitoring financial results and controls have been blamed for recent corporate failures. The bill therefore requires CEOs and CFOs to certify their companies' financial reports, outlaws fraud and deception by managers in the auditing process, prevents CEOs and CFOs from benefitting from profits they receive as a result of misstatements of their company's financials, and facilitates the imposition of judicial bars against officers and directors who have violated the securities laws. Finally, title III includes a provision intended to prevent employees from being required to hold company stock in their retirement accounts while officers and directors are free to sell their shares.

A. Issuer audit committees

Oversight of Auditors. Witnesses at the Committee's hearings suggested that the auditing process may be compromised when auditors view their main responsibility as serving the company's management rather than its full board of directors or its audit committee. For this reason, the bill requires audit committees to be directly *24 responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of auditors, and requires auditors to report directly to the audit committee.

Many witnesses testified as to the importance of these provisions. In particular, witnesses believed that the hiring and firing of the auditor should be the exclusive province of the audit committee. A number of witnesses emphasized that "audit committees [should] be solely responsible for the retention of accounting firms and be responsible for the fees paid to them." [FN43] Sarah Teslik, Executive Director of the Council of Institutional Investors, told the Committee that "perhaps [the] single first step [Congress] should take to increase auditor independence is to require a listing standard [of the national securities exchanges and associations] that the audit committee of the board hire and fire the auditors," the approach taken by the bill. [FN44] Additional witnesses who supported making the audit committee responsible for hiring and firing the auditors included: Robert E. Litan, Director of the Economic Studies Program of The Brookings Institution; Damon Silvers, Associate General Counsel of the AFL-CIO; and former U.S. Comptroller General Bowsher. [FN45]

Audit Committee Member Independence. Many recent failures have been attributed to close ties between audit committee members and management. In 1998-99, the NYSE and Nasdaq sponsored the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees. The Blue Ribbon Committee, chaired by Committee witnesses Ira Millstein and John Whitehead, made a number of recommendations to enhance audit procedures and effectiveness, including recommendations to increase the independence of audit committee members. Mr. Millstein and Mr. Whitehead, as well as Blue Ribbon Committee member John Biggs, testified at the hearings in support of adoption of the Blue Ribbon Committee's recommendations. [FN46] Consistent with their recommendations, the bill enhances audit committee independence by barring audit committee members from accepting consulting fees or being affiliated

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 24-9 f 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

persons of the issuer or the issuer's subsidiaries other than in the member's capacity as a member of the board of directors or any board committee.

The audit committee independence provisions were supported by a number of witnesses in addition to Messrs. Millstein, Whitehead, and Biggs. Former SEC Chairman Arthur Levitt testified that "as a listing condition, stock exchanges should require at least a majority of company boards to meet a strict definition of independence," including barring audit committee members from accepting consulting fees from the company. [FN47] Former SEC Chairman Roderick M. Hills and Washington University School of Law Dean Seligman also recommended that Congress require that companies have independent *25 audit committees. [FN48] Former Senator Howard Metzenbaum, the Chairman of Consumer Federation of America, testified that lack of independence frequently leads audit committees to have a "fealty to the management that an audit committee shouldn't have." [FN49]

Additional Audit Committee Responsibilities. The bill contains several additional provisions regarding audit committees. The bill requires audit committees to have in place procedures to receive and address complaints regarding accounting, internal control, or auditing issues. Further, the bill includes an amendment by Senator Stabenow providing protection for corporate "whistleblowers" by specifying that audit committees must establish procedures for employees' anonymous submission of concerns regarding accounting or auditing matters.

The bill also requires public companies to provide their audit committees with authority and funding to engage independent counsel and other advisers as they determine necessary in order to carry out their duties. Comptroller General Walker agreed that audit committee members must be "adequately resourced," suggesting that audit committee members "may need their own staff." [FN50]

In light of recent events, the Committee believes that these audit committee provisions should be codified in the securities laws in order to help rectify auditing misconduct and to enhance the effectiveness of audit committee oversight of public company audits.

B. Corporate responsibility for financial reports

The Committee believes that management should be held responsible for the financial representations of their companies. The bill therefore clearly establishes that CEOs and CFOs are responsible for the presentation of material in their company's financial reports. Under one of the recommendations put forward by the President on March 7, "CEOs would personally attest each quarter that the financial statements and company disclosures accurately and fairly disclose the information of which the CEO is aware that a reasonable investor should have to make an informed investment decision." In effect the bill adopts this proposal, in an approach developed with Senator Miller, by requiring CEOs and CFOs to certify, in periodic reports containing financial statements filed with the Commission pursuant to section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, the appropriateness of financial statements and disclosures contained therein, and that those financials and disclosures fairly present the company's operations and financial condition.

These provisions reflect the Committee's concern regarding the reliability of companies' audited financial statements. In his testimony before the Committee,

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 25-qef 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

former SEC Chairman Breeden recognized that there is "growing doubt about whether audited financial statements are believable." [FN51] Council of Institutional Investors Executive Director Sarah Teslik echoed this concern in testifying that *26 "CEOs, audit committee members and outside auditors" should be required to "sign the financials as true and accurate." [FN52]

C. Prohibited influence

Numerous witnesses testifying before the Committee, including Shaun O'Malley, Chair of the 2000 Public Oversight Board Panel on Audit Effectiveness, and Sarah Teslik, Council of Institutional Investors Executive Director, were concerned with addressing fraud and misconduct in the audit process. [FN53] In response, title III of the bill makes it unlawful for any officer or director of an issuer, or person acting under the direction thereof, to fraudulently influence, coerce, manipulate, or mislead any accountant engaged in preparing an audit of that issuer, for the purpose of rendering the audit report misleading. The Commission is provided with exclusive authority to enforce this section. The bill establishes a 90-day deadline for proposed rules or regulations by the Commission under this section, and a 270-day deadline for final rules or regulations.

D. Forfeiture of bonuses and profits

Recent events have raised concern about management benefitting from unsound financial statements, many of which ultimately result in corporate restatements. The President has recommended that "CEOs or other officers should not be allowed to profit from erroneous financial statements," and that "CEO bonuses and other incentive-based forms of compensation [sh]ould be disgorged in cases of accounting restatement and misconduct."

Title III includes provisions designed to prevent CEOs or CFOs from making large profits by selling company stock, or receiving company bonuses, while management is misleading the public and regulators about the poor health of the company. The bill requires that in the case of accounting restatements that result from material non-compliance with SEC financial reporting requirements, CEOs and CFOs must disgorge bonuses and other incentive-based compensation and profits on stock sales, if the non-compliance results from misconduct. The required disgorgement applies to amounts received for the 12 months after the first public issuance or filing of a financial document embodying such financial reporting requirement. Under this section, the SEC may exempt any person from this requirement as it deems necessary and appropriate.

E. Officer and director bars and penalties

Title III also includes several measures affecting officers and directors who have violated the securities laws. The staff of the Commission indicated to the Committee staff that when enforcement proceedings are brought under the securities laws, courts in some cases have been reluctant to impose prospective bars against violators serving as officers or directors of companies. The bill would facilitate not only the SEC's prevention of individuals who have violated the securities laws

S. REPCASO 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 26-9f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

from serving as officers and directors, but also the imposition of penalties on violators of securities laws.

*27 Currently, it must be proved that an officer or director has both violated the securities laws, and has shown "substantial unfitness" to serve before a bar can be imposed. The Commission has argued that the "substantial unfitness" standard for imposing bars is inordinately high, causing courts to refrain from imposing bars even in cases of egregious misconduct. The proposed bill rectifies this deficiency by modifying the standard governing imposition of officer and director bars from "substantial unfitness" to "unfitness."

These provisions also reflect the President's recommendation that "CEOs or other officers who clearly abuse their power should lose their right to serve in any corporate leadership positions."

The Commission has also suggested that it should be allowed to obtain additional relief in enforcement cases. For a securities law violation, currently an individual may be ordered to disgorge funds that he or she received "as a result of the violation." Rather than limiting disgorgement to these gains, the bill will permit courts to impose any equitable relief necessary or appropriate to protect, and mitigate harm to, investors.

F. Prohibition on insider trades during pension fund blackout periods

As former SEC Chairman Breeden observed, "The spectacle of corporate insiders plundering their own companies or selling their stock quietly in advance of a looming collapse has awakened a sense of revulsion among investors who were left with worthless stock." [FN54] In some cases, officers and directors have profited by selling off large portions of company stock during a time when employees were prevented from selling company stock in their section 401(k) retirement plans. To address this problem, the bill prohibits key individuals from engaging in transactions involving any equity security of the issuer during a "blackout" period when at least half of the issuer's individual account plan participants are not permitted to purchase, sell, or otherwise transfer their interest in that equity security. Upon Senator Miller's recommendation, this section applies to directors and executive officers in order to ensure that the prohibition is limited to individuals in policy-making positions.

The bill provides added protection for participants in retirement plans by requiring that they be provided with written notice at least 30 days before a black-out period. Two exceptions to the 30-day notice are provided in response to Senator Enzi's recommendations. First, an exception is allowed in cases where a deferral of the blackout period to comply with the 30-day notice requirement would violate ERISA provisions that require fiduciaries to act exclusively on behalf of participants, and those that require trustees to act prudently, in their decisions regarding plan assets. Second, an exception may be provided where the inability to provide the notice is due to unforeseeable events or circumstances beyond the reasonable control of the plan administrator.

The Committee is concerned that without the provisions of title III, our financial markets will witness numerous corporate restatements in the future. The Committee believes that title III incorporates *28 needed reforms that will enhance

S. REPCase71:207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 27gef 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

corporate responsibility among public companies.

TITLE IV-ENHANCED FINANCIAL DISCLOSURES

The Committee heard testimony about the imperative necessity for investors to have accurate and full financial information available on a timely basis in order to make appropriate investment decisions. The Committee has identified certain key disclosures that require legislative action.

A. Accounting adjustments

The bill requires that financial statements filed with the Commission reflect the material adjustments under GAAP that have been identified by the auditor.

B. Off-balance sheet transactions

Former SEC Chairman Richard Breeden testified, after the problems of Enron Corp. and its special purpose entities, on the need for "enhance[d] disclosure of 'off-balance sheet' transactions and debt." [FN55] To address this need, the bill requires annual and quarterly reports filed with the SEC to disclose all material off-balance sheet transactions, arrangements, obligations (including contingent obligations), and other relationships of the issuer with unconsolidated entities or other persons that may have a material current or future effect on financial condition, changes in financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources, or significant components of revenues or expenses.

C. Pro-forma financial disclosures

Thomas A. Bowman, President and CEO of the Association for Investment Management and Research (AIMR), testified before the Committee on his concerns about the use of pro forma disclosures:

Another creative way in which managements mislead investors and manipulate investor expectations is by communication of "pro forma earnings," company-specific variations of earnings, or "earnings before the bad stuff." With all its deficiencies, we believe that earnings data based on Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) are still the most useful starting point for analysis of a company's performance. Analysts and other investors at least know how GAAP earnings are computed and, hence, there is some comparability across companies. We believe that GAAP earnings should always be displayed more prominently than non-GAAP earnings data.

Unfortunately, just the opposite seems to be the norm, particularly in press releases where pro forma earnings get the most emphasis and GAAP earnings may not be mentioned at all. GAAP earnings and associated balance sheet may only become available to investors in SEC filings one to two weeks after pro forma earnings are announced.

While pro forma earnings can be helpful supplemental information for analysts, the practice of providing pro forma earnings is widely abused. Companies select-

S. REPCase71;07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 28-9 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

ively exclude *29 all sorts of financial reporting items, including depreciation, amortization, payroll taxes on exercises of options, investment gains and losses, stock compensation expenses, acquisition-related and restructuring costs. John Bogle, the respected investment professional, recently noted in a speech to the New York Society of Securities Analysts, "In 2001, 1,500 companies reported pro forma earnings, what their earnings would have been if bad things hadn't happened." We recommend that either the FASB or SEC curtail this practice or ensure that pro forma earnings data never have more prominence than GAAP earnings in company communications. [FN56]

Former Federal Reserve Board Chairman Paul Volcker also testified about concerns with pro forma earnings: "Those problems, building over a period of years, have now exploded in a sense of crisis, a crisis as exemplified by the Enron collapse. But Enron is not the only symptom. We've had * * * too many doubts about pro forma earnings." [FN57] Dean Joel Seligman testified that, after taking into account current regulatory efforts on disclosure of pro forma figures, "[m]ore needs to be done." [FN58]

The Committee seeks to address problems attendant to pro forma financial disclosures by requiring the SEC to promulgate rules requiring that issuers publish pro forma data with a reconciliation to comparable financial data calculated according to GAAP and in a way that is not misleading and does not contain untrue statements. The reconciliation presumes, and would require, the issuer to publish financial data calculated according to GAAP at the same time as it publishes pro forma data. This should enable investors to, at the least, simultaneously compare the pro forma financial data with the same types of financial disclosures (e.g., earnings) calculated according to GAAP for the comparable reporting period.

The Committee recognizes from the recent experience of Enron Corp. and other public companies the need for additional types of disclosures. The Committee supports public and private efforts that result in greater quality, clarity, and completeness in the disclosures made by public companies.

D. Enhanced disclosures of loans

Enron Corp. and other corporations have made loans to directors and executive officers totaling many millions of dollars. [FN59] Many of *30 these insider loans are disclosed to investors in the annual proxy materials months after they occur.

In his testimony, former SEC Chairman Richard Breeden recommended that "immediate 8-K disclosure" of insider loans be required. [FN60]

The Committee is aware that investors are concerned about loans to insiders and want to know this information promptly after the loans are made in order to better inform their investment decisions. The bill requires an issuer in its current reports to disclose within seven days, or such other time period determined to be appropriate by the SEC, all loans, except credit card loans, made by the issuer and its affiliates to any director or executive officer, specifying amounts paid and balances owed on such obligations and any conflicts of interest, as defined by the SEC. The Committee created an exemption from reporting for credit card loans made by the issuer to a director or executive officer in the ordinary course of the issuer's consumer credit business, of a type generally made available by the

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 29 of 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

delay in reporting.

issuer to the public on market terms. The bill gives the SEC the flexibility to shorten the period to less than seven days or extend it to more than seven days if it deems appropriate.

These provisions will result in information about insider loans and other conflicts of interest being disclosed in a timely manner so investors can consider such data in making their investment decisions.

E. Disclosures of transactions involving management

The Committee received testimony that insiders should be required to report their transactions in the stock of their companies more promptly. Ira Millstein, Senior Partner, Weil, Gotshal & Manges LLP and Co-Chair of the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees, testified that, "SEC rules should be amended to mandate prompt disclosure of transactions between the corporation (or its affiliates) and members of senior management, directors or controlling shareholders." [FN61] Former Comptroller General Bowsher echoed this objective when he testified: "To discourage conflicts of interest involving public corporations, Congress should amend the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 to require more meaningful and timely disclosure of related party transactions among officers, directors, or other affiliated persons and the public corporation." [FN62] At present, Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act requires insiders to report trades by the tenth day of the month following the month in which the transaction was executed. The Committee recognizes *31 that some investors find trades by insiders to be probative of whether investing in a company is desirable and feel that, in today's markets, the current deadline imposed by Section 16(a) allows too long a

The bill would amend Section 16(a) to require directors, officers and 10 percent equity holders to report their purchases and sales of securities more promptly, that is, by the end of the second day following the transaction or such other time established by the SEC where the two-day period is not feasible. The purpose is to make available to investors information about insider transactions more promptly so they can make better informed investment decisions.

F. Management assessment of internal controls

The Committee heard testimony from former Comptroller General Bowsher, who recommended:

Management of public companies should be required to prepare an annual statement of compliance with internal controls to be filed with the SEC. The corporation's chief financial officer and chief executive officer should sign this attestation and the auditor should review it. An auditor's review and report on the effectiveness of internal controls would-as the General Accounting Office (GAO) found in a 1996 report-improve "the auditor's ability to provide more relevant and timely assurances on the quality of data beyond that contained in traditional financial statements and disclosures." Both the POB and the AICPA supported the recommendation when the GAO made it, but the SEC did not adopt it. [FN63]

In order to enhance the quality of reporting and increase investor confidence,

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 30 of 31

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

the bill requires that annual reports filed with the SEC must be accompanied by a statement by the management of the issuer that management is responsible for creating and maintaining adequate internal controls. Management must also present its assessment of the effectiveness of those controls. A similar requirement was enacted in 1991 and has been imposed on depository institutions through Section 36 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act.

In addition, the company's auditor must report on and attest to management's assessment of the company's internal controls. In requiring the registered public accounting firm preparing the audit report to attest to and report on management's assessment of internal controls, the Committee does not intend that the auditor's evaluation be the subject of a separate engagement or the basis for increased charges or fees. High quality audits typically incorporate extensive internal control testing. The Committee intends that the auditor's assessment of the issuer's system of internal controls should be considered to be a core responsibility of the auditor and an integral part of the audit report.

G. Exemptions for investment companies

The bill exempts investment companies from certain disclosure requirements. The Committee feels that the objectives of those disclosure sections are adequately addressed by existing Federal securities *32 laws and the rules thereunder affecting investment companies.

For example, Section 17(a) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 and Rule 17j-1 thereunder prohibit affiliated persons of an investment company from borrowing money or other property from, or selling or buying securities or other property to or from the investment company, or any company that the investment company controls. Investment company officials therefore would not have any insider loans to report, as would be required under the bill.

H. Code of ethics for senior financial officers

The problems surrounding Enron Corp. and other public companies raise concerns about the ethical standards of corporations and their senior financial managers. The Committee believes that investors have a legitimate interest in knowing whether a public company holds its financial officers to certain ethical standards in their financial dealings. The bill requires issuers to disclose whether or not they have adopted a code of ethics for senior financial officers and, if not, why not. This section was recommended by Senator Corzine.

I. Disclosure of audit committee financial expert

As discussed above, the Committee received testimony about the important role played by the audit committee in corporate governance. The Committee believes the effectiveness of the audit committee depends in part on its members' knowledge of and experience in auditing and financial matters. Investors may find it relevant in making their investment decisions whether an issuer's audit committee has at least one member who has relevant, sophisticated financial expertise with which to discharge his or her duties.

S. REPCase/1:207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 31-9f 31

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

The bill requires the SEC to adopt rules requiring issuers to disclose whether their audit committees include among their members at least one "financial expert." In defining "financial expert," the SEC shall consider whether a person understands GAAP and financial statements, has experience preparing or auditing financial statements, has experience with internal accounting controls, and understands audit committee functions.

TITLE V-ANALYST CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

The Committee heard persuasive testimony that a serious problem exists regarding conflicts of interest between Wall Street stock analysts and their employing brokerage firms, on the one hand, and the public companies that the stock analysts cover, on the other hand. Growing knowledge of these conflicts is harming the integrity and credibility to the public of stock analyst recommendations.

The Committee heard testimony from Thomas A. Bowman, President and CEO of the Association for Investment Management and Research, who said, "Clearly, the erosion of investor confidence in the independence and objectivity of 'Wall Street' research reports and recommendations * * * could seriously harm the reputation of the entire investment profession." [FN64] He added, "Only if the investing *33 public believes that the information available to them is fair, accurate, and transparent can they have confidence in the integrity of the financial markets and the investment professionals who serve them." [FN65] He explained how "some Wall Street firms may pressure their analysts to issue favorable research on current or prospective investment-banking clients" and that investors who receive recommendations "may not be aware of the pressures on Wall Street analysts." [FN66] Former SEC Chairman Richard Breeden suggested as a goal that Congress "[i]mprove independence of stock analyst recommendations," explaining that "[a]nalyst recommendations should be driven by analysis and fundamentals, not the pursuit of investment banking business for their firms." [FN67]

The Attorney General of the State of New York, Eliot Spitzer, in a letter to Chairman Sarbanes, stated, "Problems in this area have existed for several years and recently appear to have grown worse." [FN68] In his office's extensive investigation of analyst recommendations, he said he has found that "research reports and stock ratings of companies that were potential banking clients of [a major broker-dealer] were often distorted to assist the firm in obtaining and retaining investment banking business. One management document we obtained actually acknowledged the conflict and its results, stating: 'We are off base on how we rate stocks and how much we bend over backwards to accommodate banking, etc.' We believe that the lack of research independence from investment banking likely extends to other firms as well." [FN69]

The Committee feels that it is critical to restore investor confidence in this area. The bill is intended to prevent certain pressures on analysts which could compromise their objectivity and to provide disclosure to investors of certain conflicts of interest that can also influence the objectivity of the analyst in preparing a research report.

The Committee received testimony specifically demonstrating that conflicts of interest distort securities analysts' recommendations. Professor John Coffee of

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 329 of 32

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Columbia Law School told the Committee of a number of studies that sought to assess the impact of conflicts of interest on the objectivity of securities analysts' recommendations:

Several studies find that 'independent' analysts (i.e., analysts not associated with the underwriter for a particular issuer) behave differently than analysts who are so associated with the issuer's underwriter. For example, Roni Michaely and Kent Womack find that the long-run performance of firms recommended by analysts who are associated with an underwriter was significantly worse than the performance of firms recommended by independent securities analysts.* *

Still another study by CFO Magazine reports that analysts who work for full-service investment banking firms have 6% higher earnings forecasts and close to 25% more *34 buy recommendations than do analysts at firms without such ties. Similarly, using a sample of 2,400 seasoned equity offerings between 1989 and 1994, Lin and McNichols find that lead and co-underwriter analysts' growth forecasts and particularly their recommendations are significantly more favorable than those made by unaffiliated analysts. [FN70]

The Committee also heard testimony on a variety of specific analyst conflicts and the manner in which they might be addressed. These conflicts included the firm's manner of compensating the analyst, revenues to the firm from the subject company, pressure and coercion from the investment banking staff and others on the analyst, retaliation against the analyst, and the analyst's or the analyst's firm's ability to profit from stock ownership and trading.

Chinese Walls. Dean Joel Seligman recommended addressing "whether investment banks have adequately maintained 'Chinese walls' between retail brokerage and underwriting and whether, more fundamentally, securities firms that underwrite should be separated from retail brokerage." [FN71] The bill creates new Section 15A(n)(1)(C) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which mandates rules "to establish structural and institutional safeguards within registered brokers or dealers to assure that securities analysts are separated by appropriate informational partitions within the firm from the review, pressure, or oversight of those whose involvement in investment banking activities might potentially bias their judgment or supervision."

Blackout Periods. Professor Coffee cited abuses involving the so-called "Booster Shot" and recommended that research reports not be issued during certain periods. He testified:

Firms contemplating an IPO increasingly seek to hire as lead underwriter the firm that employs the star analyst in their field. The issuer's motivation is fueled in large part by the fact that the issuer's management almost invariably is restricted from selling its own stock (by contractual agreement with the underwriters) until the expiration of a lock-up period that typically extends six months from the date of the offering. The purpose of the lock-up agreement is to assure investors that management and the controlling shareholders are not "bailing out" of the firm by means of the IPO. But as a result, the critical date (and market price) for the firm's insiders is not the date of the IPO (or the market value at the conclusion of the IPO), but rather the expiration date of the lock-up agreement six months later (and the market value of the stock on that date). From

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 33-9 of 31

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

the perspective of the issuer's management, the role of the analyst is to "maintain a buzz" about the stock and create a price momentum that peaks just before the lock-up's expiration. To do this, the analyst may issue a favorable research report just before the lock-up's expiration (a so-called "booster shot" in the vernacular). To the extent that favorable ratings issued at this point seem particularly *35 conflicted and suspect, an NASD rule might forbid analysts associated with underwriters from issuing research reports for a reasonable period (say, thirty days) both before and after the lock-up expiration date. Proposed Rule 2711 [of the NASD] stops well short of this and only extends the "quiet period" so that it now would preclude research reports for this first 40 days after an IPO. Such a limited rule in no way interferes with the dubious tactic of "booster shots." [FN72]

The bill directs that rules be adopted "to define periods during which brokers or dealers who have participated, or are to participate, in a public offering of securities as underwriters or dealers should not publish or otherwise distribute research reports relating to such securities or to the issuer of such securities." The "booster shot" is a type of situation that the SEC and the self-regulatory organizations should consider in framing such rules.

Services Provided. Mr. Bowman recommended disclosure of "the nature of the relationship or services provided" by an analyst's firm to the subject company. [FN73] The bill requires disclosure of the types of services provided.

Supervision by Investment Bankers and Disclosure of Investment Banking Relationships. Michael Mayo, Managing Director of Prudential Securities, recommended that Congress "[t]ake actions to minimize the interference of investment bankers with the job of research analysts" and "[d]isclose investment banking relationships to investors." [FN74] The bill prohibits the pre-publication clearance of research or recommendations by investment banking or other staff not directly responsible for investment research and requires disclosure of whether the issuer is or has recently been a client of the analyst's firm, and if so, the services provided.

Lynn Turner, former SEC Chief Accountant, testified: "As long as the investment-banking arm of Wall Street has influence over the work of the research analysts or their compensation, analysts will not be able to provide independent research." [FN75] The bill requires the creation of rules that limit the supervision and compensatory evaluation of research personnel to officials who are not engaged in investment banking activities.

Compensation from the Subject Firm to the Broker and Deal-Based Analyst Pay. Mr. Mayo raised the concern, "Does the retail investor know that the brokerage firm pitching shares is also earning investment banking fees from the company?" and also recommended that the Congress "eliminate deal-based incentive pay" for research analysts. [FN76] The bill requires disclosure of whether any compensation has been received by the broker-dealer from the issuer, subject to such exemptions as the Commission may determine necessary and appropriate to prevent disclosure of material non-public information regarding specific potential future investment banking transactions of such issuer, as is appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors. The *36 bill, while not eliminating deal-based pay, requires disclosure of whether the analyst received compensation

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 34-9 of 34

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

based on an affiliate's investment banking revenues from the subject of any research report.

Retaliation. The Committee heard testimony about the serious problem of retaliation against analysts who wrote negative research reports. Professor Coffee testified, "In self-reporting studies, securities analysts report that they are frequently pressured to make positive buy recommendations or at least to temper negative opinions." [FN77] He added, "According to one survey, 61% of all analysts have experienced retaliation-threats of dismissal, salary reduction, etc.-as the result of negative research reports. Clearly, negative research reports (and ratings reductions) are hazardous to an analyst's career. Congress could either adopt, or instruct the NASD to adopt, an anti-retaliation rule: no analyst should be fired, demoted, or economically penalized for issuing a negative report, downgrading a rating, or reducing an earnings, price, or similar target." [FN78]

Eliot Spitzer, Attorney General of the State of New York, concluded that the analyst conflict regulations put forth by the self-regulatory organizations "fall short of what should be legislated in this area [because], [f]or example, the regulations fail to address the problem of intimidation or retaliation against analysts who publish unfavorable research about a company." [FN79]

The bill requires rules to be promulgated to protect securities analysts from retaliation or intimidation because of negative, or otherwise unfavorable, research reports, subject to the proviso that such rules may not limit a broker-dealer from disciplining a securities analyst in accordance with firm policies and procedures for causes other than writing such a research report.

Professor Coffee recommended that a no-retaliation rule should:

not bar staff reductions or reduced bonuses based on economic downturns or individualized performance assessments. Thus, given the obvious possibility that the firm could reduce an analyst's compensation in retaliation for a negative report, but describe its action as based on an adverse performance review of the individual, how can this rule be made enforceable? The best answer may be NASD arbitration. That is, an employee who felt that he or she had been wrongfully terminated or that his or her salary had been reduced in retaliation for a negative research report could use the already existing system of NASD employee arbitration to attempt to reverse the decision. Congress could also establish the burden of proof in such litigation and place it on the firm, rather than the employee/analyst. Further, Congress could entitle the employee to some form of treble damages or other punitive award to make this form of litigation viable. Finally, Congress could mandate an NASD penalty if retaliation were found, either by an NASD arbitration panel or in an NASD disciplinary proceeding. [FN80]

*37 The exception is intended to make certain that writing a negative research report does not protect an analyst who is, for example, incompetent or otherwise deficient. However, it is not intended to be used to permit a broker-dealer to discipline a good analyst for writing a negative report using a false pretext. In adopting a proposed rule, the SEC or a self-regulatory organization should consider Professor Coffee's recommendations.

Additional Analyst Issues. The Committee heard testimony about various additional concerns and recommendations to prevent analyst conflicts of interest and oth-

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 35-9f 34

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

erwise enhance investor protection, some of which are discussed below. Professor Coffee recommended "A No-Selling Rule." He testified:

If we wish the analyst to be a more neutral and objective umpire, one logical step might be to preclude the analyst from direct involvement in selling activities. For example, it is today standard for the "star" analyst to participate in "road shows" managed by the lead underwriters, presenting its highly favorable evaluation of the issuer and even meeting on a one-to-one basis with important institutional investors. Such sales activity seems inconsistent with the much-cited "Chinese Wall" between investment banking and investment research * * *.

Although a "no-selling" rule would do much to restore the objectivity of the analyst's role, one counter-consideration is that the audience at the road show is today limited to institutions and high net worth individuals. Hence, there is less danger that the analyst will overreach unsophisticated retail investors. For all these reasons, this is an area where a more nuanced rule could be drafted by the NASD at the direction of Congress that would be preferable to a legislative command. [FN81]

Dean Joel Seligman also recommended considering "a new form of adviser liability for recommendations without a reasonable basis." [FN82]

Mr. Bowman recommended disclosure of "[i]nvestment holdings of Wall Street analysts, their immediate families, the Wall Street firm's management and the firms themselves" as well as disclosure of "[m]aterial gifts received by the analyst from either the subject company or the Wall Street firm's investment-banking or corporate finance department." [FN83]

Mr. Bowman explained the need for greater explanatory information about analysts' rating systems. He said that "rating systems need to be overhauled so that investors can better understand how ratings are determined and compare ratings across firms. Ratings must be concise, clear, and easily understood by the average investor" and he recommended disclosures of "where and how to obtain information about the firm's rating system." [FN84] He also said that "Wall Street analysts and their firms should also be required to update or re-confirm their recommendations on a timely and regular basis, and more frequently in periods of high market volatility. *38 They should be required to issue a "final" report when coverage is being discontinued and provide a reason for discontinuance. Quietly and unobtrusively discontinuing coverage or moving to a "not rated" category, i.e., a "closet" sell, does not serve investors' interests." [FN85]

The Committee also heard testimony about the intimidation of analysts by issuers. Mr. Bowman testified that:

strong pressure to prepare "positive" reports and make "buy" recommendations comes directly from corporate issuers, who retaliate in both subtle, and not so subtle, ways against analysts they perceive as "negative" or not "understanding" their company. Issuers complain to Wall Street firms" management about "negative" or uncooperative analysts. They bring lawsuits against firms and analysts personally for negative coverage. But more insidiously, they "blackball" analysts by not taking their questions on conference calls or not returning their individual calls to investor relations or other company management. This puts the "negative" analyst at a distinct competitive disadvantage, increases the amount of uncertainty

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 36-9f 31

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

an analyst must deal with in doing valuation and making a recommendation, and disadvantages the firm's clients, who pay for that research. Such actions create a climate of fear and intimidation that fosters neither independence nor objectivity. Analysts walk a tightrope when dealing with company managements. A false step may cost them an important source of information and ultimately their jobs. [FN86] Mr. Mayo, a victim of issuer retaliation, gave testimony from first-hand experience of the problem. He said, "It is still hard for an analyst to be objective and critical. When an analyst says "Sell," there can be backlash from investors who own the stock, from the company being scrutinized, and even from individuals inside the analyst's firm. While much attention in Washington is being paid to the pressures related to a firm's investment banking operations, other pressures can be as great or more. The main point: Some companies may intimidate analysts into being bullish. Those who stand up may face less access to company information and perhaps backlashes, too." [FN87]

While the bill does not specifically identify remedies to these situations, it authorizes the Commission, or a registered securities association or exchange at the Commission's direction, to create rules to address such other issues as it determines appropriate and to require such other disclosures of conflicts of interest that are material to investors, research analysts, or the broker or dealer as it deems appropriate. The Commission, and the association and exchanges, should consider the issues noted above as they adopt other rules necessary and appropriate to protect investors in the area of analyst recommendations. The prohibition of specific activities identified in title V is not an exhaustive solution to the analyst conflicts problem, and the Committee expects the Commission and *39 the self-regulatory organizations to use their authority to apply such additional rules as they deem appropriate.

The bill requires that rules be adopted within one year. Existing rules that satisfy the requirements of the bill do not have to be reproposed or readopted. Existing rules that do not contradict the bill or that impose requirements that are not imposed by the bill do not have to be withdrawn or reproposed. For example, self-regulatory organization rules that require disclosure of statistics regarding analyst ratings or of the securities holdings of an analyst's family members in a subject company are not adversely affected by this bill.

It should be noted that title V of the bill creates a new Section 15A(n)(B), (C) and (D) of the Exchange Act, which requires disclosure of simply "affirmative" or "negative" in response to "whether" an event has occurred. Further, Section 15A(n)(C) requires a description of the types of services provided, rather than a list of all specific services. This requirement is to enable the investor to assess whether the relationship is likely to influence the objectivity of the subjective portions of the research report.

The new Section 15A(n)(B) of the Exchange Act created by the bill authorizes the Commission to grant exemptions to prevent disclosure of material non-public information about specific future investment banking revenues. In determining whether to grant an exemption, the Commission should take into account the importance that Congress places on providing investors with this information for making investment decisions and the likelihood that stating an affirmative response would

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 37-9 f 34

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

divulge material non-public information that would be understood by investors, particularly in light of the size and complexity of the brokerage firm. For example, a complex brokerage firm which has received money from an issuer may be far less likely to disclose material nonpublic information simply by responding "yes," and therefore not merit an exception, than a small firm that only is engaged to find buyers for an issuer and has received compensation.

The Committee heard testimony from authorities which stated that the rules set forth by self-regulatory organizations are inadequate to address the analyst conflicts of interest issue. Former SEC Chairman Arthur Levitt testified, "we must better expose Wall Street analysts' conflicts of interest * * * the New York Stock Exchange and the National Association of Securities Dealers [rulemaking] * * * is not enough." [FN88] Also, Attorney General Spitzer stated "the proposed regulations by the National Association of Securities Dealers and the New York Stock Exchange fall short of what should be legislated in this area." [FN89] The Committee feels that while the NYSE and NASD rules will improve the quality of analysts' stock recommendations, title V is needed to address analyst conflicts and to strengthen investor protection.

TITLE VI-COMMISSION RESOURCES AND AUTHORITY

The Committee determined that it is necessary to increase the resources available to the SEC and to increase the authority of the *40 SEC to enable it more effectively to accomplish its mission of assuring the integrity of the markets and protecting investors.

SEC Authorization. Witnesses before the Committee testified consistently and strongly that the SEC needs additional resources in order to effectively carry out its mission and protect investors. John Whitehead, former Co-Chairman, Goldman Sachs & Co., testified: "I think the SEC is under-funded and has been for some years. When you consider the seriousness [to] the system of just one Enron, it's dangerous to fool around with relatively small increases in budgets that the SEC asks for." [FN90] David Walker, U.S. Comptroller General, testified, "[T]he SEC's ability to fulfill its mission has become increasingly strained due in part to imbalances between the SEC's workload (such as filings, complaints, inquiries, investigations, examinations and inspections) and staff resources * * . Over the last decade, securities markets have experienced unprecedented growth and change * * . At the same time, the SEC has been faced with an ever-increasing workload and ongoing human capital challenges, most notably high staff turnover and numerous vacancies." [FN91]

Former SEC Chairmen Roderick Hills, Harold Williams, Richard Breeden, and Arthur Levitt all supported increasing the SEC's resources. [FN92] Chairman Breeden recommended that Congress "[s]trengthen the SEC's resources through expanded budget authority (offset by increased user fees), immediate and continuing funding of pay parity provisions, and addition of 200 new accounting positions." [FN93]

Professor John Coffee testified, "I think you're hearing from all of us that the SEC is resource-constrained and I think the less visible casualty of that are the offices such as the office of the chief accountant, where you can't really measure the output until a scandal like Enron comes along." [FN94]

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 38-96 38

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

The Committee also received and considered the General Accounting Office report, "SEC OPERATIONS: Increased Workload Creates Challenges," March 5, 2002 (GAO-02-302). GAO found that industry officials said "the SEC's limited staff resources have resulted in substantial delays in SEC regulatory and oversight processes, which hampers competition and reduces market efficiencies. In addition, they said information technology issues need additional funding, and SEC needs more expertise to keep pace with rapidly changing financial markets. Finally, the officials said that SEC's reliance on a small number of seasoned staff to do the majority of the routine work does not allow those staff to adequately deal with emerging issues."

The bill authorizes an appropriation of \$776,000,000 for the SEC for fiscal year 2003. This includes:

\$102,700,000 to fund pay on a par with the federal bank regulators for SEC employees' salaries as well as their fringe benefits, as authorized by the Investor and Capital Markets Fee Relief Act (P.L. 107-123);

*41 \$108,400,000 to fund enhanced information technology, security enhancements, and recovery and mitigation activities; and

\$98,000,000 to fund at least 200 more professionals to oversee auditors and auditing services, and additional staff to improve SEC investigative and disciplinary efforts and strengthen the SEC's oversight and regulation of market participants and of issuer disclosure, securities markets, and investment companies.

Codifying Rule of Procedure. In its Rules of Procedure, the SEC has a procedure to discipline professionals, including accountants, who lack the requisite qualifications to practice before the Commission. Professor Coffee testified before the Committee that "[t]he SEC's authority under Rule 102(e) was clouded by the D.C. Circuit's decision in Checkosky v. SEC, 139 F.3d 221 (D.C. Cir. 1998) (dismissing Rule 102(e) proceeding against two accountants of a "Big Five" firm). The SEC revised Rule 102 in late 1998 in response to this decision (see Securities Act Rel. No. 7593 (Oct. 18, 1998)), but its authority in this area is still subject to some doubt that Congress may wish to remove or clarify." [FN95] Lynn E. Turner, former SEC Chief Accountant, said, "[t]he statutory authority of the SEC also needs to be examined and beefed up as it relates to Rule 102(e) proceedings." [FN96]

The bill codifies the authority of the SEC in 17 CFR 210.102(e) to censure or deny, temporarily or permanently, the privilege of appearing or practicing before it to any person found by the SEC after notice and opportunity for hearing: (i) not to possess the requisite qualifications to represent others, (ii) to be lacking in character or integrity or to have engaged in unethical or improper professional conduct, or (iii) to have willfully violated, or willfully aided and abetted the violation of, any provision of the federal securities laws or the rules and regulations thereunder.

Penny Stock Bar. Under current law, the penny stock bar is available only in administrative proceedings. However, the Commission frequently brings cases involving serious microcap or penny stock fraud in federal district court in order to obtain injunctive relief. In such a case, if the Commission also wishes to obtain a penny stock bar, it must bring a separate administrative proceeding, typically after the district court case is concluded. The Commission would be able to

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 39-0f 31

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

obtain all necessary relief more efficiently if the district courts had the authority to order penny stock bars.

The bill authorizes federal courts to impose penny stock bars, or conditionally or unconditionally and temporarily or permanently prohibit a person from participating in a penny stock offering. The Commission has requested this authority in order to deal more swiftly with penny stock fraud.

Qualifications of Associated Persons of Brokers and Dealers. The SEC staff has advised the Committee that in recent years, there has been a growing perception that fraud artists are able to exploit gaps in federal and state regulatory systems and to move from one sector of the financial services industry to another without sufficient *42 impediment. The SEC lacks the enforcement authority to bar individuals from coming into the securities industry who have been found by other financial regulators to have engaged in fraudulent, deceptive, or dishonest conduct in other financial industries. The bill gives the SEC this power. In order to reduce the migration of fraud perpetrators into the securities industry, the bill authorizes the Commission to bar from the securities industry persons who have been suspended or barred by a state securities, banking, or insurance regulator because of fraudulent, manipulative, or deceptive conduct. The Commission requested this authority.

TITLE VII-STUDIES AND REPORTS

The Committee identified two subjects of concern for additional study: the ongoing consolidation of the accounting industry and the performance of credit rating agencies.

Historically, the accounting industry has been consolidating into fewer large accounting firms. James E. Copeland, CPA and Chief Executive Officer, Deloitte & Touche, testified, "I've been on record since the last spate of proposed mergers saying that I thought the further consolidation of our industry would not be in the public's interest." [FN97]

The bill, in a section authored by Senator Akaka, directs the Comptroller General, in consultation with the SEC, similar regulatory agencies of the other G-7 nations, and the Department of Justice, to conduct a study identifying the factors that have led to the consolidation of public accounting firms since 1989, the impact of such consolidation, and solutions to any problems caused by such consolidation. The study shall also examine the problems faced by businesses as a result of limited competition among public accounting firms, and consider whether federal or state regulations impede competition among public accounting firms. A report is to be submitted to the Senate Banking Committee and the House Financial Services Committee within one year of enactment of this legislation.

The Federal regulation of credit-rating bureaus was raised at the hearing of March 21, 2002. The bill, in a section authored by Senator Bunning, directs the SEC to conduct a study of the role of credit rating agencies in the operation of the securities market, including an examination of the role of credit rating agencies in the evaluation of issuers, the importance of that role to investors, any impediments to the rating agencies' accurate appraisal of issuers, any barriers to entry into the business of acting as a credit rating agency, measures to improve

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 40-pef 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

the dissemination of information about issuers when credit rating agencies announce credit ratings, and any conflicts of interest in the operation of credit rating agencies. A report is to be submitted to the President, the Senate Banking Committee, and the House Financial Services Committee within 180 days of enactment.

*43 SECTION-BY-SECTION ANALYSIS

Section 1. Short title and table of contents

Section 2. Definitions

Section 2 contains a set of definitions of terms that are used in the bill.

- 1. An "appropriate state regulatory authority" is a state authority responsible for licensing or other regulation of the practice of accounting in a state that has jurisdiction over an accounting firm or its personnel in connection with a particular matter.
- 2. An "audit" is an examination of the financial statements of an issuer by an independent public accounting firm, in accordance with rules of the new accounting oversight board or the SEC, for the purpose of expressing an opinion on those statements. This definition should be read in connection with the definitions of "issuer" and "audit report," below.
- 3. An "audit committee" is a committee of an issuer's board of directors created to oversee the accounting and financial reporting processes and audits of the financial statements of the issuer.
- 4. An "audit report" is a document, prepared following an audit performed for purposes of an issuer's compliance with the federal securities laws, in which a public accounting firm sets forth its opinion regarding a financial statement, report, or other document, or asserts that no such opinion can be expressed.
- 5. The "Board" is the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board established by section 101 of the bill.
 - 6. The "Commission" is the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission.
- 7. An "issuer" is a company that issues or proposes to issue securities, if the securities are registered under section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or if the company is required to file reports with the SEC under section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act (or will be required to file those reports at the end of the fiscal year in which a registration statement for the issuer's securities has become effective under the Securities Act of 1933).
- 8. "Non-audit services" are professional services provided to an issuer by an accounting firm registered with the Board, other than those required to be provided in connection with an audit or other review of the issuer's financial statements.
- 9. A "person associated with a public accounting firm" is a proprietor, partner, shareholder, principal, or an accountant or other professional employee of a public accounting firm, or any independent contractor or entity that shares in compensation or profits, or that participates on behalf of the firm in an activity, in connection with preparation or issuance of an audit report.

S. REPCase71: Ω 7-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 41-gef 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

- 10. "Professional standards" include (i) accounting principles established by the standard-setting body recognized under the bill or prescribed or recognized by the SEC that are relevant to particular audit reports or accounting firm quality control systems, and (ii) auditing standards, standards for attestation engagements, quality control policy, ethical and competency standards, and independence standards that relate to the preparation of audit reports and are established or adopted by the Board or SEC.
- *44 11. A "public accounting firm" includes a proprietorship or entity engaged in the practice of public accounting or preparing or issuing audit reports. To the extent the new oversight board designates in its rules, the term can also include an associated person of an accounting firm.
- 12. A "registered public accounting firm" is a firm that registers with the new oversight board, as required by section 102 of the bill.
- 13. The "rules of the Board" include both the formal bylaws and rules adopted by the new oversight board (subject to action of the SEC under section 107 of the bill) and stated policies, practices, and interpretations of the board that the SEC deems to be rules of the board.
- 14. The term "security" has the same meaning as in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act.
- 15. The term "securities laws" has the meaning given that term in section 3(a)(47) of the Securities Exchange Act, and includes the SEC's rules, regulations and orders. (Section 2(b), in a conforming amendment, makes the bill a part of the section 3(a)(47) definition.)
- 16. A "State" includes any state of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, and any other U.S. territory or possession.

Section 3. Commission rules and enforcement

Section 3 generally gives the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission" or the "SEC") authority to promulgate rules consistent with the Act and provides that a violation of the Act, or of any rule of the Commission or of the new Public Company Accounting Oversight Board created by title I of the Act, will be treated for all purposes as a violation of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the rules thereunder; similarly, the new Board will be treated as if it were a self-regulatory organization under the 1934 Act for purposes of the Commission's investigative and enforcement authority. It should be emphasized that the new Board's own authority is limited to the work of accountants in auditing public companies; the Board has no jurisdiction with respect to the work of accountants in performing audits of other companies.

Section 3 thus confirms that the Commission will have the authority to enforce the Act directly. Section 3 also makes clear that nothing in the Act or the rules of the new Board limits the Commission's own authority over accounting firms and their personnel, or accounting, auditing, independence, or other standards relating to auditors' reports.

TITLE I-PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 42-9 of 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Section 101. Establishment

Section 101 creates a new Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (the "Board"). The Board will oversee the auditing of companies that are subject to the federal securities laws (i.e., companies ("public companies" or "issuers") that have chosen to sell stock or debt instruments to public investors). Accounting firms that perform audits of public companies must register with the Board, and the Board will possess authority, subject to action by the Commission, to (i) set auditing, quality control, ethics, and independence standards (the latter supplementing statutory provisions on that *45 subject), with respect to audits of the financial statements of public companies, (ii) inspect accounting firms' audit operations with respect to public companies, (iii) investigate potential violations by the firms or their partners or employees of the Act, the Board's rules, related provisions of the securities laws (and the Commission's rules), and professional accounting and conduct standards, and (iv) impose sanctions for violations. Again, the Board's authority in these areas is focused on, and limited to, the audit of public companies; it has no jurisdiction over accountants performing other audits. The Board is to submit an annual report of its activities to the Commission, which in turn is to send a copy to the House Committee on Financial Services and the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs within 30 days of receipt. Legally, the Board will be a private nonprofit corporation subject to the District of Columbia Nonprofit Corporation Act. The Board will not be an agency or

Legally, the Board will be a private nonprofit corporation subject to the District of Columbia Nonprofit Corporation Act. The Board will not be an agency or establishment of the United States. It is explicitly given authority to set compensation for its employees at levels comparable to similar positions in the private sector.

Membership. Section 101(e) provides that the Board will have five members. The initial Board will be appointed by the Commission, after consultation with the Federal Reserve Board and the Department of the Treasury, within 90 days of the date of enactment; vacancies will be filled by the Commission after similar consultations. Board members will serve full-time, for five-year (staggered) terms, with a two-term limit. All Board members must have an understanding of the responsibilities for and the nature of the financial disclosures and accountants' responsibilities required by the securities laws. Three members of the Board will have a general background, and two members will have an accountancy background; the Board's Chairperson may be one of the two Board members with an accountancy background, but if so, he or she may not have been a practicing accountant for at least five years prior to appointment to the Board. Internal Board standard of conduct rules must include a one-year ban on practice before the Board (or before the Commission, with respect to Board-related matters) for former Board members and appropriate "cooling off" periods (not to exceed one year) for former Board staff.

The initial Board's first task will be to hire staff, propose or adopt its first sets of rules and generally bring the organization into operational existence, so that the Commission can make a determination, required under section 101(d) within 270 days of enactment, that the Board possesses the capacity to carry out its responsibilities and enforce compliance with title I of the Act.

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 43-9 f 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Section 102. Registration with the Board

The Commission's determination that the Board can begin to exercise its authority starts the running of a 180-day period within which each public accounting firm that prepares or issues audit reports for public companies must register with the Board. At the end of the 180-day period it will become unlawful for an unregistered accounting firm to audit a public company. (Again, lack of registration will have no effect on an accounting firm's ability to perform any other sort of work.) An application for registration must include information about the identity of the public companies for which an accounting firm currently or during the previous *46 year performs or has performed audit work, certain current financial information about the accounting firm itself, a statement of the firm's quality control policies for its accounting and auditing practice, a list of the firm's accountants who participate in public company audits, and information about pending civil, criminal, or disciplinary actions, and client-auditor disputes, relating to the firm's audits of public companies. The application must also include a consent to compliance with any requests for documents or testimony, within the Board's authority, made to the registrant in the course of the Board's operation and an agreement to obtain and if necessary to enforce similar consents from the firm's partners and employees who participate in public company audits. Registered accounting firms will be required to report changes in this information to the Board annually (or more frequently if the Board so requires).

Information submitted to the Board as part of each application will be made available to the public, subject to limitations to protect the confidentiality of proprietary, personal, and other information for which such protection is necessary or required by law. In particular, information "reasonably identified by [the registrant] as proprietary information" will be withheld from disclosure.

The Board is authorized by section 102(f) to impose a registration fee and an annual fee on each registrant, to cover the cost of processing and reviewing applications and annual reports.

Section 103. Auditing, quality control, and independence standards and rules

Section 103 requires the Board to establish auditing, quality control, and ethical standards, as required by the Act or the rules of the Commission or necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to be used by registered accounting firms in the preparation of audit reports for public companies. The Board is also to adopt rules to implement the provisions on the independence of public company auditors contained in title II of the Act.

The Board's rules specifically must require (i) preparation and maintenance for 7 years by public company auditors of audit work papers and related information in sufficient detail to support each audit's conclusions, (ii) "second partner" review and approval of each public company audit report and its issuance, and (iii) inclusion in each audit report of a description of the auditor's testing of the public company's systems for compliance with the requirements of section 13(b)(2) of the Securities Exchange Act and of the company's controls over its receipts and expenditures, together with specific notation of any significant defects or mater-

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 44-9 of 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

ial noncompliance of which the auditor should know on the basis of such testing. Section 103 also specifies the subjects that the quality control standards adopted by the Board must address. These are: monitoring of ethics and independence; internal and external consulting on audit issues; audit supervision; hiring, development, and advancement of audit personnel; acceptance and continuance of engagements; and internal inspection.

The Board may adopt as part of its rules (and modify as appropriate for that purpose, at the time of adoption or thereafter), any portion of a statement of auditing, quality control, or ethics standards *47 that meet the statutory test prepared (i) by a professional group of accountants designated by a rule of the Board for that purpose, or (ii) by one or more advisory groups convened by the Board. (Pre-existing standards of designated professional groups of accountants that may be adopted during the Board's nine-month transitional period are to be separately approved by the Commission at the time of the Commission's determination (pursuant to section 101(d), noted above) that the Board is ready to begin operation.)

The Board will convene advisory groups of practicing accountants and other experts, as well as representatives of other interested groups (subject to appropriate conflict of interest rules), to make recommendations concerning, or propose drafts of, the content of any required standards for public company auditors.

The Board is to cooperate on an ongoing basis with both the designated professional groups of accountants noted above, and with its own advisory groups, in examining the need for changes in any standards subject to Board authority. The Board is to recommend issues for inclusion on the agendas of these groups, and take other steps to facilitate the standard-setting process, and it is to respond in a timely fashion to requests for changes in the standards over which the Board has authority.

Finally, the Board is to include a summary of the results of its standard-setting responsibilities in each of its annual reports. Each summary must include a discussion of the Board's work with any designated professional group of accountants or advisory group, as well as the Board's pending agenda for future standard-setting projects.

Section 104. Inspections of registered public accounting firms

Section 104 outlines the duty of the staff of the Board to undertake annual inspections of registered public accounting firms that prepare audit reports for more than 100 public companies, and triennial inspections of firms that prepare audit reports for 100 or fewer public companies, to assess the degree of compliance by those firms with the Act, the rules of the Board, and professional standards relating to audits of public companies. (The inspection cycles for different-sized accounting firms may be subsequently changed by the Board.) The Board is to (i) identify in the course of each inspection any act, practice, or omission by the firm or its partners or employees revealed by the inspection that may violate the Act, the Board's or related Commission rules, the firm's own quality control policies, or professional standards, (ii) report any such finding, if appropriate, to the Commission and each state accountancy board with jurisdiction over the mat-

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 45-9 f 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

ter, and (iii) commence a formal investigation or take any appropriate disciplinary action with respect to the violation.

The scope of each inspection will include both particular audit and review engagements (which may include engagements that are otherwise the subject of ongoing controversy between the accounting firm under inspection and third parties), selected solely by the Board, as well as a review of each firm's quality control system and its compliance with professional standards relating to audit reports for public companies. The term "professional standards" means, for purposes of title I and the Board's authorization, (i) generally accepted *48 accounting principles, (ii) auditing standards, standards for attestation engagements and quality control policies, and ethical and competency standards that the Board adopts, and (iii) independence standards that the Board adopts to implement title II of the Act.

The rules of the Board are to provide a procedure for review and comment on a draft inspection report by the firm inspected; the text of any comment by the firm on a draft inspection report is to be attached, with appropriate redactions to protect confidential information, to the final report. That report is to be sent to the Commission and the appropriate state board of accountancy and made available to the public (subject, again, to protection of confidential and proprietary information). Portions of an inspection report which deal with criticisms of or potential defects in the quality control systems of a firm will not be made public if the defects are addressed to the satisfaction of the Board within 12 months of the date of the report. In certain cases interim Commission review of certain inspection-related disputes is available.

Section 105. Investigations and disciplinary proceedings

Section 105 outlines the investigative and disciplinary authority of the Board over firms that audit public companies and partners and employees of these firms.

Investigations. Section 105(a) authorizes the Board to investigate any act or practice by a registered accounting firm, or its partners or employees, that may violate the Act, the Board's rules, professional standards, and the portion of the securities laws and SEC rules that relate to the preparation and issuance of audit reports and the obligations and liabilities of accountants with respect thereto. The Board may require testimony or production of documents or information, or inspect documents or information, in the possession of any registered public accounting firm or its partners or employees. The Board's investigative activities and any information gathered in the course of an investigation are to be confidential and privileged for all purposes (including civil discovery), unless and until particular information is presented in connection with a public proceeding. The Board may refer investigations to the Commission, any other federal functional regulator (in the case of an investigation relating to the audit of an institution subject to the jurisdiction of such functional regulator), and, at the direction of the Commission, to the Attorney General, state attorneys general in connection with any criminal investigation, or appropriate state boards of accountancy, and may share information derived from investigations with the same parties, but only if the Board determines that such disclosure is "necessary to accomplish the purS. REPCase71;07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 46-9f 7

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

poses of the Act or to protect investors." The Board's investigators are granted civil immunity for their activities during an investigation to the same extent that a federal investigator would enjoy such immunity.

Disciplinary proceedings. Section 105(b) authorizes the Board to impose a full range of sanctions if it finds that a registered firm, or its partners or employees, have engaged in any act or practice that violates the Act, the Board's rules, professional standards, or the portion of the securities laws (and SEC rules) relating to audits of public companies. Potential sanctions include revocation or suspension *49 of the registration of an accounting firm, or of the ability of particular individuals to remain associated with that firm or become associated with any other registered accounting firm (effectively barring the subject of the sanction from participating in audits of public companies), substantial civil money penalties, required professional education or training, or censure; the Board's ability to suspend or bar an associated person from the auditing of public companies, and the Board's ability to impose civil money penalties above a certain amount, is limited to situations involving intentional, knowing, or reckless conduct, or repeated negligent conduct. The Board may also impose sanctions upon a registered accounting firm for failure reasonably to supervise a partner or employee (in terms similar to those that apply to broker-dealers under section 15(b)(4) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which permit the firm to defend by showing that its internal control procedures were reasonable and were operating fully in the case at issue).

The Board's rules must set out fully the procedural requirements for disciplinary proceedings. Disciplinary sanctions finally imposed must be reported to the Commission, appropriate state or foreign boards of accountancy, and the public (once any stay of enforcement pending appeal has been lifted). Any sanction may be appealed to the Commission under the provisions of section 107(c) (described below).

Fines imposed by the Board are to be used to fund a scholarship program for students in undergraduate or graduate programs in accounting.

Section 106. Foreign public accounting firms

Section 106 provides that accounting firms organized under the laws of countries other than the United States that issue audit reports for public companies subject to the U.S. securities laws are covered by the Act in the same manner as domestic accounting firms, subject to the exemptive authority of both the Board and the Commission. (Registration under the Act will not in itself provide a basis for subjecting a foreign accounting firm to U.S. jurisdiction other than with respect to controversies between such a firm and the Board.) The Board is authorized to determine that other foreign accounting firms play a sufficiently substantial role in the preparation and furnishing of such reports for particular issuers that their coverage under the Act is necessary or appropriate, in light of the purposes of the Act and in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

Section 106 also sets terms for the production in the United States by a foreign public accounting firm of its audit work papers, for any audit in which the foreign accounting firm issues an opinion or otherwise performs material services

S. REPCASO 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 4790 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

upon which an accounting firm registered under the Act relies in issuing all or part of an audit report for a public company.

Section 107. Commission oversight of the Board

Section 107 makes the Board generally subject to the same degree of control by the Commission as the National Association of Securities Dealers or the New York Stock Exchange. Section 107(b) provides that the Board's proposed rules must be filed with the *50 Commission and published by the Commission for public comment. No Board rule may take effect without Commission approval (except in limited situations), and the Commission retains the power not only to disapprove, but to abrogate or amend, any rules of the Board. Section 107(c) incorporates the provisions of section 19(d)(2) and (e)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 to give the Commission full authority to review, modify, or cancel any disciplinary sanction imposed by the Board (including any sanction imposed for failure to comply with a demand for testimony or documents in the course of a Board investigation), either upon the Commission's own motion or on the motion of an aggrieved party. (The Commission may, in some cases, also review registration- or inspection-related disputes.) Finally, the Commission possesses authority to limit the authority and activities, or to censure, or even to remove members, of the Board itself, if the Commission finds that the Board, or a particular member, has violated, is unable to comply with, or has failed to enforce compliance with the Act, the Board's or the Commission's rules, or the securities laws, has failed to enforce compliance with professional standards, or, in the case of a particular Board member, has willfully abused his or her authority.

Section 108. Accounting standards

Section 108 amends section 19 of the Securities Act of 1933 specifically to allow the Commission to recognize as "generally accepted" (for securities law purposes) accounting principles established by a standard-setting body that meets certain criteria. First, the body must be a private entity and be funded by public companies in the same manner as the Board (provided in section 109 of the Act), and it must have adopted procedures, including acting by majority vote, to ensure prompt consideration of necessary changes to the body of accounting principles. Second, the Commission must determine that the standard-setting body has the ability to assist the Commission, because the standard-setting body has proved able to improve the accuracy and effectiveness of financial reporting and the protection of investors. Any such standard-setting body must report annually to the Commission. Finally, section 108 requires the Commission to conduct a study of the adoption by the U.S. financial reporting system of a principles-based accounting system.

Section 109. Funding

Section 109 provides that the Board and the accounting principles standard-setting body recognized under section 108 of title I are to be funded by an "accounting support fee." (The Board's budget, but not the budget of the standard-setting

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 48-9 f 78

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

body, is to be subject to approval by the Commission.) In the case of both the Board and the standard-setting body, the annual support fee is to be assessed against each public company. Amounts payable by public companies to either body will generally be allocated among those companies based on relative average annual monthly market capitalization for the 12 months prior to the year to which the support fee relates; both the Board and the standard-setting body are permitted to differentiate among various classes of public companies, as necessary or appropriate, in allocating fees. Fees are to be collected in such manner as is deemed appropriate in each case.

*51 TITLE II-AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE

Section 201. Services outside the auditor scope of practice

The Act restricts a registered public accounting firm in the non-audit services it may provide to its audit clients that are public companies in order to preserve the firm's independence. The Act specifies eight categories of activities that an auditor may not provide to a public company that is its audit client. These include: (1) bookkeeping or other services related to the accounting records or financial statements of the issuer; (2) financial information systems design and implementation consulting services; (3) appraisal or valuation services, fairness opinions, or contribution-in-kind reports; (4) actuarial services; (5) internal audit services; (6) any management or human resources function; (7) broker, dealer, investment adviser, or investment banking services; and (8) legal services and expert services unrelated to the auditing service. In addition, the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board may determine that any other non-audit service is prohibited. The Board has the authority to grant exemptions on a case-by-case basis to the extent necessary or appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors, subject to SEC review. A registered public accounting firm would be permitted to perform for a public company audit client any other non-audit service, including tax services, that the public company's Audit Committee pre-approves in accordance with the requirements adopted in Section 202.

The Act would not affect the services that a registered public accounting firm provides to non-public companies or to public companies that are not its audit clients. Thus, a firm could provide any consulting service to any public company for which it does not provide audit services as well as to any non-public company.

Section 202. Pre-approval requirements

The Audit Committee of a public company must pre-approve all the services, both audit and non-audit, provided to that company by a registered public accounting firm. The public company is required to disclose the Audit Committee's approvals of non-audit services to shareholders in SEC filings. The pre-approval requirement is waived if an auditor provides a service that was not recognized to be a non-audit service at the time of the engagement and if the aggregate amount of all such non-audit services is 5% or less of total auditor fees and such services are promptly brought to the attention of the Audit Committee and approved by the Audit

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 49 of 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Committee prior to the completion of the audit. Approval may be made by one or more members of the Audit Committee, to whom such authority has been delegated. The decisions of any delegated member to pre-approve an activity shall be presented to the full Audit Committee at each of its meetings.

Section 203. Audit partner rotation

A registered public accounting firm must rotate its lead partner and review partner on its audits of a public company so that no partner performs an audit on the same issuer as a lead partner or review partner for more than five consecutive years.

*52 Section 204. Auditor report to Audit Committees

A registered independent public accounting firm performing an audit for a public company will timely report to that company's Audit Committee the critical accounting policies and practices to be used and all alternative treatments of financial information within GAAP that have been discussed with management, any accounting disagreements between the auditor and management and other material written communications between the auditor and management.

Section 205. Conforming amendments

Section 206. Conflicts of interest

An accounting firm may not provide audit services for a public company if that company's chief executive officer, controller, chief financial officer, chief accounting officer, or other individual serving in an equivalent position, was employed by the accounting firm and worked on the audit of the public company during the one year before the start of the audit services.

Section 207. Study of mandatory rotation of registered public accounting firms

The GAO will study the potential effects of requiring the mandatory rotation of registered public accounting firms and report to Congress within one year.

Section 208. Commission authority

A registered independent public accounting firm must comply with the restrictions in sections 201-204 and 206 in order to perform an audit for a public company.

Section 209. Considerations by appropriate state regulatory authorities

It is the intent of this Act that in supervising non-registered accounting firms, state regulatory authorities should make an independent determination of the proper standards, and should not presume the standards applied by the Board under this Act to be applicable to small- and medium-sized non-registered accounting firms.

S. REPCase/1:207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 50 of 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

TITLE III-CORPORATE RESPONSIBILITY

Section 301. Issuer Audit Committees

The Exchange Act is amended to require the SEC to draft rules directing national securities exchanges and national securities associations to require listed companies to make Audit Committees responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of auditors and to require auditors to report directly to the Audit Committee. The amendments also: bar Audit Committee members from accepting consulting fees or being affiliated persons of the issuer or the issuer's subsidiaries other than in the member's capacity as a member of the board of directors or any board committee; require Audit Committees to have in place procedures to receive and address complaints regarding accounting, internal control or auditing issues; require Audit Committees to establish procedures *53 for employees' anonymous submission of concerns regarding accounting or auditing matters; and require public companies to provide their Audit Committees with authority and funding to engage independent counsel and other advisers as they determine necessary.

Section 302. Corporate responsibility for financial reports

CEOs and CFOs must certify, in periodic reports containing financial statements filed with the Commission pursuant to section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, the appropriateness of financial statements and disclosures contained therein, and that those financials and disclosures fairly present the company's operations and financial condition.

Section 303. Prohibited influence

It is unlawful for any officer, director, or person acting under their direction to fraudulently influence, coerce, manipulate, or mislead any accountant engaged in preparing an audit report, for the purpose of rendering the audit report misleading.

Section 304. Forfeiture of certain bonuses and profits

In the case of accounting restatements that result from material non-compliance with SEC financial reporting requirements, CEOs and CFOs must disgorge bonuses and other incentive-based compensation and profits on stock sales, if the non-compliance results from misconduct. The required disgorgement applies to the 12 months after the first public issuance or filing of a financial document embodying such financial reporting requirement. The SEC may exempt any person from this requirement as it deems necessary and appropriate.

Section 305. Officer and director bars and penalties

The sanction of barring securities law violators from serving as officers or directors of public companies is strengthened by modifying the standard that governs judicial imposition of officer and director bars. In addition, courts may impose any equitable relief necessary or appropriate to protect, and mitigate harm

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 51-96 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

to, investors.

Section 306. Insider trades during pension fund blackout periods prohibited

Directors and executive officers are prohibited from engaging in transactions involving any equity security of the issuer during a "blackout" period when at least half of the issuer's individual account plan participants are not permitted to purchase, sell or otherwise transfer their interest in that equity security. No blackout period may take effect until at least 30 days after written notice of the blackout is provided by the plan administrator to the participants or beneficiaries. Exceptions to the 30-day notice are allowed in cases: (1) where a deferral of the blackout period would violate ERISA fiduciary provisions; or (2) where the inability to provide the notice is due to unforeseeable events or circumstances beyond the reasonable control of the plan administrator.

*54 TITLE IV-ENHANCED FINANCIAL DISCLOSURES

Section 401. Disclosures in periodic reports

A public company in periodic reports filed with the SEC will present: (1) disclosures of financial information that reflect all material correcting adjustments that have been identified by the auditor in accordance with GAAP and (2) the material off-balance sheet transactions, arrangements, obligations, and other relationships of the issuer with unconsolidated entities or other persons that may have a material current or future effect on financial condition, changes in financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources or significant components of revenues or expenses.

Issuers that disseminate "pro forma" financial information in their filings with the SEC, press releases or other public disclosures must present pro forma data in a manner that does not contain an untrue statement or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the information, in light of the circumstances under which it is presented, not misleading, and that reconciles it with the issuer's financial condition under GAAP.

Section 402. Enhanced disclosures of loans

An issuer in its current reports must disclose within 7 days, or such other time period determined to be appropriate by the SEC: (A) all loans, except credit card loans, made by the issuer and its affiliates to any executive officer or director, specifying amounts paid and balances owed on such obligations and (B) any conflicts of interest, as defined by the SEC.

Section 403. Disclosures of transactions involving management

Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act is amended to require directors, officers and 10% equity holders to report their purchases and sales of securities more promptly, by the end of the second day following the transaction or such other time established by the SEC in any case in which the two-day period is not feas-

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 52/9ef 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

ible.

Section 404. Management assessment of internal controls

Annual reports filed with the SEC must be accompanied by a statement by the management of its responsibility for creating and maintaining adequate internal controls. Management must also present its assessment of the effectiveness of those controls. In addition, the company's auditor must report on and attest to management's assessment of the company's internal controls. Such attestation shall not be the subject of a separate engagement.

Section 405. Exemption

Investment companies are exempted from the disclosure requirements of sections 401, 402 and 404.

Section 406. Code of ethics for senior financial officers

Issuers are required to disclose whether or not they have adopted a code of ethics for senior financial officers, and if not, the reason therefor.

*55 Section 407. Audit Committee financial expert

The SEC is required to adopt rules to require issuers to disclose whether their Audit Committees include among their members at least one "financial expert." In defining "financial expert," the SEC shall consider whether a person understands GAAP and financial statements, has experience preparing or auditing financials, has experience with internal accounting controls, and understands Audit Committee functions.

TITLE V-ANALYST CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

Section 501. Treatment of securities analysts by registered securities associations

The Act requires the Commission, or upon the authorization and direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange, within one year to adopt rules designed to address conflicts of interest facing securities analysts. The rules will (A) foster greater public confidence in securities research and protect the objectivity and independence of stock analysts who publish research intended for the public by (i) prohibiting the pre-publication clearance of such research or recommendations by investment banking or other staff not directly responsible for investment research, (ii) limiting the supervision and compensatory evaluation of such research personnel to officials who are not engaged in investment banking activities, and (iii) protecting securities analysts from retaliation or threats of retaliation by investment banking staff because of negative or otherwise unfavorable research reports that might adversely affect investment banking relations with the issuer described in the report, provided that the rules shall not limit the authority of a broker or dealer to discipline a se-

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 53-9 f 3

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

curities analyst for causes other than such report in accordance with the firm's policies and procedures, (B) define periods during which broker-dealers who participate in a public offering of securities as underwriters or dealers shall not publish research or recommendations about the securities of the issuer, (C) establish structural and institutional safeguards within broker-dealers to assure that securities analysts preparing research reports are separated by appropriate informational partitions from the review, pressure, or oversight of those whose involvement in investment banking activities might potentially bias their judgment or supervision, and (D) address such other issues as the SEC or the SROs deem appropriate.

The Act also requires the Commission, or upon the direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange, to adopt rules requiring disclosures about conflicts of interest in reports and public appearances. These disclosures include (A) the extent to which the analyst holds securities in the issuer, (B) whether compensation has been received from the issuer, subject to such exemptions as the Commission may determine appropriate and necessary to prevent disclosure of material non-public information regarding specific potential future investment banking transactions as is appropriate in the public interest and consistent with investor protection, (C) whether the issuer is or has recently been a client of the analyst's firm, and if so, the types of services provided, (D) whether the analyst received compensation *56 based on an affiliate's investment banking revenues, and (E) such other disclosures as the SEC or the SROs deem appropriate. The regulator would have the authority to amend its rules.

TITLE VI-COMMISSION RESOURCES AND AUTHORITY

Section 601. Authorization of appropriations

There is authorized an appropriation of \$776,000,000 for the SEC for fiscal year 2003, of which: \$102,700,000 would fund the pay parity of salary and benefits for SEC employees, as authorized in the Investor and Capital Markets Fee Relief Act (P.L. 107-123); \$108,400,000 would fund information technology, security enhancements, and recovery and mitigation activities in light of the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001; and \$98,000,000 would fund at least 200 more professionals to oversee auditors and auditing services, and additional staff to improve SEC investigative and disciplinary efforts and strengthen the SEC's oversight and regulation of market participants and of issuer disclosure, securities markets and investment companies.

Section 602. Appearance and practice before the SEC

The SEC is authorized to censure or deny, temporarily or permanently, the privilege of appearing or practicing before it to any person found by the SEC after notice and opportunity for hearing: (i) not to possess the requisite qualifications to represent others, (ii) to be lacking in character or integrity or to have engaged in unethical or improper professional conduct, or (iii) to have willfully

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 54-96 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

violated, or willfully aided and abetted the violation of any provision of the federal securities laws or the rules and regulations thereunder. This codifies Section 102(e) of the SEC's Rules of Practice.

Section 603. Federal court authority to impose penny stock bars

Federal courts are authorized to conditionally or unconditionally and temporarily or permanently prohibit a person from participating in a penny stock offering.

Section 604. Qualifications of associated persons of brokers and dealers

The SEC is authorized to bar from the securities industry persons who have been suspended or barred by a state securities, banking or insurance regulator because of fraudulent, manipulative or deceptive conduct.

TITLE VII-STUDIES AND REPORTS

Section 701. GAO study and report regarding consolidation of public accounting firms

The Comptroller General, in consultation with the SEC, similar regulatory agencies of the other G-7 nations, and the Department of Justice, is to conduct a study identifying the factors that have led to the consolidation of public accounting firms since 1989, the impact of such consolidation, and solutions to any problems caused by such consolidation. The study shall also examine the problems faced by businesses as a result of limited competition among public accounting firms, and consider whether federal or state regulations impede competition among public accounting firms. A report is to *57 be submitted to the Senate Banking Committee and the House Financial Services Committee within one year of enactment.

Section 702. Commission study and report regarding credit rating agencies

The SEC is to conduct a study of the role of credit rating agencies in the operation of the securities market, including an examination of the role of credit rating agencies in the evaluation of issuers, the importance of that role to investors, any impediments to the rating agencies' accurate appraisal of issuers, any barriers to entry into the business of acting as a credit rating agency, measures to improve the dissemination of information about issuers when credit rating agencies announce credit ratings, and any conflicts of interest in the operation of credit rating agencies. A report is to be submitted to the President, the Senate Banking Committee, and the House Financial Services Committee within 180 days of enactment.

CHANGES IN EXISTING LAW

On June 18, 2002, the Committee unanimously approved a motion by Senator Sarbanes to waive the Cordon rule. Thus, in the opinion of the Committee, it is necessary to dispense with the requirement of section 12 of Rule XXVI of the Standing Rules of the Senate in order to expedite the business of the Senate.

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 55-9 f 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

REGULATORY IMPACT STATEMENT

In accordance with paragraph 11(b), rule XXVI, of the Standing Rules of the Senate, the Committee makes the following statement concerning the regulatory impact of the bill.

The bill make structural changes in various aspects of the federal securities laws. Titles I through IV and portions of title VI affect the auditing of public companies and financial disclosures by those companies and their managers. Title V affects conflicts of interest by employees of broker-dealers who issue research reports dealing with particular companies or industries.

There are, according to the SEC, approximately 16,500 public companies subject to the federal securities laws. [FN98] Fewer than 15 percent of the nation's accounting firms audit any public companies, and only 20 firms have more than 30 audit clients. [FN99] There are perhaps 75-100 registered broker-dealers that issue research reports of the type dealt with in title V, and perhaps as many as 5000 analysts who prepare those research reports.

The bill establishes a comprehensive framework to modernize and reform the oversight of public company auditing, improve quality and transparency in financial reporting by those companies, and strengthen the independence of auditors. It promotes competition among service providers, enhances accurate investor decision-making *58 throughout the capital markets, and seeks to correct shortcomings that have threatened the reputation of those markets for integrity.

The legislation should have little additional impact upon the privacy of particular individuals. Information and documents held by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board created by the bill are generally confidential and privileged until made public in connection with a particular public enforcement proceeding. Corporate managers and others affected by the bill are already subject to extensive reporting requirements under the federal securities laws.

Specific rules issued by the SEC under various provisions of the bill will contain their own regulatory and paperwork estimates, as required by applicable law. Otherwise, it is difficult to measure, at this time, the extent to which the bill would impose additional costs beyond those described in the CBO estimate, below. In addition, the bill's net regulatory impact upon the economy can be positive, especially as its terms operate to reduce crises in corporate management and value of the sort the economy is now witnessing. Finally, the immediate regulatory impact of the bill must be weighed against the continuing serious adverse economic impact on investors, the markets, and the national economy of the failure of existing regulatory arrangements and the decline in investor confidence, here and abroad, that this failure has generated. For all of these reasons, the Committee has determined that more extensive compliance with rule XXVI(11)(b) than that contained above is impracticable.

COST OF LEGISLATION

Section 11(b) of rule XXVI of the Standing Rules of the Senate, and Section 403 of the Congressional Budget Impoundment and Control Act, require that each committee report on a bill contain a statement estimating the cost of the proposed le-

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

(Leq.Hist.)

gislation. The Congressional Budget Office has provided the following cost estimate and estimate of costs of private-sector mandates.

U.S. Congress,

Congressional Budget Office,

Washington, DC, June 27, 2002.

Hon. Paul S. Sarbanes,

Chairman, Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs,

U.S. Senate, Washington, DC.

Dear Mr. Chairman: The Congressional Budget Office has prepared the enclosed cost estimate for the Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002.

If you wish further details on this estimate, we will be pleased to provide them. The CBO staff contacts are Ken Johnson (for federal costs), Greg Waring (for the state and local impact), and Paige Piper/Bach (for the private-sector impact).

Sincerely,

Robert A. Sunshine

(For Dan L. Crippen, Director). Enclosure.

*59 CONGRESSIONAL BUDGET OFFICE COST ESTIMATE

Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002

Summary: The bill would establish two new organizations—the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (Oversight Board) to regulate the accounting industry and the Standard—Setting Body to write national standards for accounting practices. The activities of these organizations would be overseen by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). In addition, the bill would authorize the appropriation of \$776 million in 2003 for the SEC's activities. Under the bill, both the SEC and the Oversight Board could assess civil penalties for violations of the bill's provisions. Any civil penalties collected by the Oversight Board would be spent on a scholarship program for accounting students. The bill also would require the General Accounting Office (GAO) to complete two studies of the accounting industry within one year of enactment.

Based on information from the SEC, CBO estimates that implementing this bill would cost about \$787 million over the 2003-2007 period, assuming the appropriation of the necessary amounts. Under current law, the SEC's discretionary costs are offset by fees the agency collects from securities markets. Enactment of the bill would not change the amount of fees expected to be collected in the future. Assuming the continued collection of the regulatory fees assessed by the SEC, the commission would collect \$1.3 billion in fees in 2003, and its net outlays would be --\$621 million in that year. The two GAO studies also would cost an estimated

S. REPCASO 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 57-9 f 34

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

\$1 million in 2003, subject to the availability of appropriated funds. CBO estimates that the bill would have effects on revenues and direct spending, but that the net effect of those changes would be negligible each year. Because the bill would affect revenues and direct spending, pay-as-you-go procedures would apply.

The bill contains an intergovernmental mandate as defined in the Unfunded Mandates Reform Act (UMRA), but CBO estimates that complying with that mandate would result in no costs to state, local, or tribal governments. Therefore, the threshold established by UMRA (\$58 million in 2002, adjusted annually for inflation) would not be exceeded.

The bill would impose several private-sector mandates, as defined by UMRA, on certain accounting firms, companies that issue registered securities, officers and directors of those companies, investment banking firms, and securities analysts. CBO cannot determine whether the direct cost of those mandates would exceed the annual threshold set by UMRA for private-sector mandates (\$115 million in 2002, adjusted annually for inflation). The mandate costs are difficult to estimate because (1) we do not have sufficient information to estimate the cost of prohibiting insider trading during blackout periods when investment activity is restricted; (2) the cost to comply with several of the mandates would depend on rules soon to be prescribed by the SEC under current authority; and (3) the cost to comply with several of the mandates would be prescribed by the SEC under the bill.

Estimated cost to the Federal Government: The estimated budgetary impact of the bill is shown in the following table. The costs of this legislation would fall within budget functions 370 (commerce *60 and housing credit-for the SEC) and 800 (general government-for GAO).

TABULAR OR GRAPHIC MATERIAL SET FORTH AT THIS POINT IS NOT DISPLAYABLE

Basis of estimate

For this estimate, CBO assumes that the bill will be enacted by the end of fiscal year 2002. Assuming appropriation of the necessary funds, CBO estimates that implementing the bill would cost the SEC about \$787 million and GAO about \$1 million during the 2003-2007 period. We estimate that the bill also would affect both revenues and direct spending, but that the net impact of those effects would be negligible for each year.

The SEC is typically funded through fees the agency collects for registrations, transactions, and mergers of securities. Under current law, the fee rates are determined periodically by the SEC, and they are collected only to the extent provided in advance in appropriations acts. These fees are classified in the budget as offsets to the SEC's discretionary spending.

Spending subject to appropriation

The bill would authorize the appropriation of \$776 million for all SEC activities in 2003. Of this amount, the bill would earmark \$103 million for higher salaries for SEC employees, \$108 million for security and information technology enhancements needed by the agency after the September 11th attacks, and \$98 million

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 58-9 f 38

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

for additional staff to monitor audit services. Based on the agency's historical spending patterns, CBO estimates that implementing this provision would result in gross outlays of about \$592 million in 2003 and \$768 million over the 2003-2004 period, assuming the appropriation of the necessary amounts. Adding these amounts to CBO's projections for fee collections in 2003, we estimate that the SEC's net spending would be --\$621 million in that year.

The bill also would require the SEC to review any sanctions or rules proposed by the Oversight Board. CBO estimates that the cost of these activities would be roughly comparable to the SEC's *61 oversight of national securities exchanges and associations. Based on information from the SEC about the cost of such oversight, CBO estimates that the SEC would require about 40 staff members, at a cost of about \$5 million a year, to review the rules and sanctions proposed by the new Oversight Board. Any amounts the SEC would spend to oversee accounting practices under the bill would be subject to the availability of appropriated funds.

Under the bill, GAO would complete two reports to the Congress on the accounting industry within one year of enactment. Based on information from GAO, CBO estimates that conducting these two studies would cost the agency about \$1 million in 2003, subject to the availability of appropriated funds.

Revenues and direct spending

CBO estimates that implementing this bill also would affect direct spending and revenues. The effects would result from the bill's provisions creating an Oversight Board and a Standard-Setting Body to oversee the accounting industry and from provisions relating to civil penalties.

Costs of Creating the Oversight Board and Standard-Setting Body. The bill would require that annual financial reports filed by public companies under the securities laws must be audited by an accountant who is deemed qualified to do so by a new organization called the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board. CBO expects this provision would give the Oversight Board substantial authority to regulate and control entry into the accounting industry, thus exercising the sovereign power of the federal government. The fact that the board's rules, sanctions, funding sources, and annual budget would be approved by the SEC indicate a significant level of federal control over the board's operations and funding. For these reasons, CBO would consider the board's spending and the fees it would collect under the bill from public companies and accounting firms as part of the federal budget (even though the bill states it would not be part of the government).

The bill also would require the SEC to designate an organization called the Standard-Setting Body to write national standards for accounting practices. Under current law, all annual financial statements filed by public companies must comply with such standards. The bill also would mandate that the Standard-Setting body assess fees on public companies using a formula that would be approved by the SEC, thereby giving the federal government control over the Standard-Setting Body's funding. Therefore CBO also would consider this body's collections and spending a part of the federal budget (even though the bill states it would be organized as a private entity).

CBO expects that operating the Oversight Board, when fully implemented, would

S. REPCase71;07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 59-9 f 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

cost at least as much as similar activities that are now performed by the Public Oversight Board (POB) and the Independence Standards Board, and through peer reviews administered by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA). Before they recently disbanded, the POB and the Independence Standards Board spent about \$8 million a year. The peer reviews administered by AICPA are conducted by other accounting firms. Based on information from AICPA, CBO estimates that these reviews could cost the Oversight Board at least \$50 million *62 a year. Similarly, CBO expects that the annual costs of the Standard-Setting Board would approach the \$20 million spent each year by the Federal Accounting Standards Board (FASB), which performs standard-setting duties today.

Under the bill, the Oversight Board and the Standard-Setting Body would assess fees on the public to cover their costs. CBO expects that the net effect of the two organizations' collections and spending under this bill would not be significant in any year. Whether such collections would be categorized in the budget as revenues or offsetting receipts is uncertain because we do not know how the organizations would assess those fees.

Civil Penalties. The bill also would authorize the SEC and the Oversight Board to enforce the bill's provisions with civil penalties. Such penalties are recorded in the budget as governmental receipts (revenues). Based on information from the SEC, CBO estimates that these provisions would increase revenues by less than \$500,000 a year.

Under the bill, any civil penalties collected by the Oversight Board would be spent on scholarships for accounting students in undergraduate or graduate programs. Because the amounts spent would equal the penalties collected by the accounting board, CBO estimates that the increase in direct spending also would be less than \$500,000 per year.

Pay-as-you-go considerations: The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act sets up pay-as-you-go procedures for legislation affecting direct spending or receipts. CBO estimates that the net pay-as-you-go effects of this bill would be insignificant for each year.

Estimated impact on state, local, and tribal governments: Because it would preempt state authority to license or regulate the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board as a nonprofit corporation, the bill contains an intergovernmental mandate as defined in UMRA. CBO estimates that this preemption would not affect state budgets because, while it would limit the application of state law towards the board, it would not impose a duty on states that would result in additional spending. Therefore, the threshold established by UMRA (\$58 million, in 2002, adjusted annually for inflation) would not be exceeded. The remaining provisions of the bill contain no intergovernmental mandates and would impose no costs on state, local, or tribal governments.

Estimated impact on the private sector

The bill would impose private-sector mandates, as defined by UMRA, on certain accounting firms, companies that issue registered securities, officers and directors of those companies, investment banking firms, and securities analysts. CBO cannot determine whether the direct cost of those mandates would exceed the annual

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 60-9f 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

threshold set by UMRA fro private-sector mandates (\$115 million in 2002, adjusted annually for inflation). The mandate costs are difficult to estimate because (1) we do not have sufficient information to estimate the cost of prohibiting insider trading during blackout periods when investment activity is restricted; (2) the cost to comply with several of the mandates would depend on rules soon to be prescribed by the SEC under current authority; and (3) the *63 cost to comply with several of the mandates would depend on rules that would be prescribed by the SEC under the bill.

Regulation of accounting firms

Under the bill, a registered public accounting firm would be:

Subject to a system of review by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board to be established under the bill;

Prohibited from offering both audit and certain non-audit consulting services (designing or implementing financial information systems or providing internal audit services); and

Required to retain all audit work papers for at least seven years.

According to the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) and other industry representatives, the accounting industry currently:

Sponsors a transitional private entity that reviews independent accountants:

Has voluntarily stopped offering both audit and such non-audit consulting services; and

Retains financial statement working papers and records for seven years.

Therefore, CBO estimates that the direct cost to comply with those new mandates would be small.

The bill would require an accounting firm to obtain a second review of audit reports from another auditor within the firm, and test and express an opinion on certain internal controls of public companies. The cost to obtain a second review and provide an opinion on compliance by a company would depend on rules to be prescribed by the SEC. Since the regulations have not been established, CBO cannot estimate the cost to comply with those mandates.

Registration and accounting support fees

The bill would require that the new Oversight Board and a designated Standard-Setting Body be independently funded by public companies. Based on information from the SEC, CBO estimates the annual cost of operating the oversight board and the standard-setting body would be approximately \$80 million. The bill would require those organizations to levy fees on registered public accounting firms and an annual accounting support fee on issuers of securities. Currently, the accounting industry is self-regulated and voluntarily provides the funding for the regulatory organization, including peer reviews. According to the SEC and the industry, the cost of oversight and review required by the bill are similar to the costs now voluntarily incurred by the industry. Therefore the incremental cost to the private sector would be small.

Auditor independence

S. REPCase/1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 61-96 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

Section 203 of the bill would prohibit the lead and review partners of an accounting firm from providing audit services for the same company for more than five consecutive years. Based on information from the AICPA, CBO estimates that the direct cost to rotate lead and review partners would be minimal.

Section 206 would prohibit an accounting firm from providing audit services for a public company if that company's chief executive *64 officer, financial officer, controller, or other equivalent position was employed by the accounting firm during the year before the start of the audit services. Based on information from the AICPA, CBO anticipates that some firms would lose business that other accounting firms would gain. Therefore, CBO estimates that total direct cost to the accounting industry would be negligible.

Corporate responsibility

The bill contains provisions that would require greater corporate responsibility for financial reports. The cost of complying with those requirements would depend on rules that the SEC has agreed to propose, but not yet promulgated. Therefore, CBO cannot estimate the direct costs of complying with the following mandates:

Section 301 would require the audit committee of a corporate board to be responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of their auditors. This section also would prohibit national securities exchanges and associations from listing companies that do not comply with certain audit committee standards.

Section 302 would require chief executive officers and chief financial officers of public companies to certify the appropriateness of their company's periodic reports and to ascertain that the financial reports fairly reflect the operations and conditions of their companies.

Periodic restrictions on insider trading

Section 306 would prohibit certain owners and officers of a company from selling equity securities issued by that company during periods (called "blackout" periods) when participants in the retirement plan are restricted in their ability to direct investments. Such periods may occur for administrative reasons-for example, when a plan changes recordkeepers. This restriction would increase the financial exposure of affected owners and officers and, thus, could impose a cost on them. CBO does not have sufficient information to estimate the amount of that cost.

Enhanced financial information disclosure

Section 403 would require officers and directors of companies that issue securities and certain owners of such securities to disclose to the SEC any insider trading by a certain time. According to the SEC, insider trading disclosure is currently required to be reported to the SEC by the tenth day following the month in which the trade occurred. Thus, CBO estimates that the cost of providing such information on an expedited basis would be small.

The bill also contains provisions that require increased disclosure of financial information. The cost of complying with those requirements would depend on rules

S. REPCase/1:207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 629ef 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

that the SEC has agreed to propose, but not yet promulgated. Therefore, SEC cannot estimate the direct costs of complying with the following mandates:

Under Title IV, the SEC would prescribe rules that would require companies that issue securities to report loans to insiders within a certain time period, to disclose material off balance sheet transactions and conflicts, and present pro forma data in a manner that is not misleading in periodic financial reports to the SEC.

*65 Section 404 would require a company and the company's auditor to attest to the company's internal control procedures in their annual reports. Public companies also would be required to disclose whether they have adopted a code of ethics for senior financial officers, and whether their audit committee has among its members a "financial expert."

Analyst conflicts of interest

Section 501 would require the SEC or a registered securities association or exchange to adopt rules to prohibit certain conflicts within investment banking firms that could compromise securities analysts' independence and to require security analysts to disclose other potential conflicts. The cost of prohibiting certain conflicts and disclosing additional information would depend on rules to be prescribed by the SEC or the directed authority. CBO does not have sufficient information to estimate the cost to comply with those mandates.

Previous CBO Estimate: On April 26, 2002, CBO transmitted a cost estimate for H.R. 3763, the Corporate and Auditing Accountability, Responsibility, and Transparency Act of 2002, as passed by the House of Representatives on April 24, 2002. H.R. 3763 would require the SEC to oversee a new board that would regulate the accounting industry and to accelerate its review of annual reports filed by public companies. CBO estimated that implementing H.R. 3763 would cost about \$150 million over the 2003-2007 period, assuming the appropriation of the necessary amounts. Because of provisions that would create new civil penalties and a new accounting board that CBO considered part of the federal budget, CBO estimated that H.R. 3763 also would cause revenues and direct spending to rise to insignificant net amounts for each year.

For H.R. 3763, CBO identified similar private-sector mandates on accountants, companies that issue registered securities, officers and directors of those companies, and certain owners of the securities. CBO could not determine whether the total direct cost of those mandates would exceed the annual threshold established by UMRA for private-sector mandates as we did not have sufficient information to estimate the cost of prohibiting insider trading during blackout periods when investment activity is restricted.

Estimate prepared by: Federal costs: Ken Johnson; impact on state, local and tribal governments: Greg Waring; impact on the private sector: Paige Piper/Bach. Estimate approved by: Peter H. Fontaine, Deputy Assistant Director for Budget Analysis.

*66 ADDITIONAL VIEWS OF SENATOR GRAMM

President Bush's Ten Point program for regulatory reform in corporate accounting

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 63-9 f 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

and governance is an excellent plan, and he and his administration are to be commended for wasting no time in implementing it. The actions already being taken by the Securities and Exchange Commission, together with their published regulatory proposals, as well as the actions taken by our nation's stock markets, are firm, clear, and directed to the real problems. They represent substantial reform. It is also undeniable that changes are occurring in every board room, on every corporate audit committee, and with every accounting firm in America. But a legislative response is also called for.

First of all though, it would be hard to overestimate the importance of maintaining our system of private setting of accounting standards through the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB). Neither Congress nor any other agency of the government should be in the business of setting accounting standards. A bad accounting standard set by an independent board is better than a good standard set by Congress. But we do need to establish a stable, reliable funding mechanism for FASB.

With regard to legislation, the reported bill is better today than the bill as first proposed, yet the fundamental problems of the original bill remain. We should pass a bill that sets up an independent ethics supervisory board that will oversee and enforce the highest standards of ethics in public accounting. This board should be given power to determine what are conflicts of interest and to make determinations on questions of auditor independence. It should also be independently funded by a source that is committed to the purpose of funding that activity, and the funding source should be reliable.

Yet, even though some flexibility has been added, the structure of the bill is still troubling. If we are going to create this independent panel, we should create one in which we can place our confidence, allowing the panel, for example, to set the standards as to what represents a conflict of interest. While it is tempting to vote on these things and to set out in government writ for all time what we mean and what we want, if we are trying to make this board powerful, why would we want to prejudge what the panel is going to decide? There is a fundamental difference between having the board make decisions or having Congress make them.

When Congress prejudges the board's activities, we eliminate the flexibility that the board will need to apply statutory principles to the variety of circumstances that appear in the real world. The one-size-fits-all approach of the bill cripples the ability of the board to adjust to differences in situations among companies-particularly to distinguish between large and small companies-as well as to stay up to date with changes that occur over time.

*67 This will be particularly hard on smaller companies. While the legislation allows for exceptions to its ban on auditors providing companies with additional services, these exceptions can only be obtained on a case-by-case basis. It is the smaller companies who routinely obtain a number of services from their auditor and who can least afford to pay for a second or third auditing firm to provide these additional services. These smaller business will be most likely to need the exemptions. But the smaller the company, the less likely it will be able to afford the legal services to get its needed exemptions from the new board. This is not a small problem, as the bill would impose its new regulatory requirements on 17,000

S. REPCase71:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 64-96 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

companies—the vast majority of which are small businesses—all across the country. It may be easy to envision requiring that General Motors have six different accounting firms to comply with the conflict of interest rules. But it stretches reason and good judgment to legislate those same standards for Joe Green and Son Motor Repair of Texarkana. We should trust the board that we create and let them look at the feasibility for large and small companies, ask them to look at the benefits to shareholders, the integrity of the financial system and long term growth prospects. It is easy to envision that they might end up with standards that would be differentiated based on the size of accounting firms and the size of the businesses that are affected. We would preserve flexibility in doing this. One-size—fits—all will hurt a lot of shareholders and the businesses in which they have invested. And heaping unnecessary costs on struggling small enterprises, it will hurt the economy.

The point is, when you start setting out in law what auditing standards are, what the conflict of interest standard is, and the many other specific mandates in the bill, you eliminate flexibility, you eliminate the ability of the board to learn what works and what does not work, and you eliminate the ability of the board to differentiate between General Motors and Joe Green and Son, Incorporated. In the process of setting up a strong, independent board we have largely done our work. We ought not to be doing the board's work after that.

In addition, before this legislation becomes law, the concerns of constitutional experts with regard to the appointment, regulatory powers, and taxing authority of this new supervisory board will need to be resolved.

Phil Gramm.

*68 ADDITIONAL VIEWS OF SENATOR ENZI

The collapse in the faith of corporate financial statements is alarming. Corporate executive abuses have shattered the savings and dreams of countless Americans. Broad and strong changes need to be implemented to restore that confidence and ensure these abuses do not take place in the future.

A wave of new regulations and legislative proposals have been introduced to protect America's investors against corporate abuses. The securities' self-regulatory organizations (SROs), the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), the White House, and Congress are all working on different approaches with the same goal-to ensure executives are providing accurate and reliable information to the public.

However, any approach must also be sensitive to the fact that auditors are a critical element in assuring the quality of a financial statement. Legislation that does not provide adequate liability protections for auditing firms will decrease the already minimal number of companies which can audit and evaluate complex and fast-growing companies. Without a competitive auditing industry, consumers may, at the end of the day, experience less reliable financial statements.

I believe this legislation, as reported by the Senate Banking Committee, will provide a disincentive for small accounting firms to continue to audit publicly traded companies. These small accounting firms may only audit a relatively few public companies, and my fear is that this legislation would increase their liab-

S. REPCase/1:207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 65/90f 74

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

ility exponentially, thus the firms would decide to cease offering services to public companies. With current litigation downsizing an already limited number of accounting firms, we cannot allow additional regulations to drive more firms from offering auditing services to public companies.

The legislation also places a negative presumption on any approval of non-prohibited consulting services. Legislation should not mandate to audit committees that all consulting services are inherently conflicted. Audit committees should be left to make their own determination as to what services provided by their auditing companies is in the best interest of their shareholders.

I also have concerns that the setting of auditing standards will be taken out of the hands of accountants. Auditing standards are complicated and detailed and the setting of them requires the knowledge and expertise of individuals who understand and work in the field of accounting. I am hesitant to allow a Board, of which the majority must be non-accountants, to establish the standards under which accountants operate.

*69 I continue to support reform of the accounting industry and will continue to work toward that goal with this legislation. I, however, will work to change aspects of the bill which I believe will impose severe unintended and unnecessary consequences on the accounting industry and their clients.

Mike Enzi.

FN1 John Shad, the SEC's Chairman from 1981-87, is deceased.

FN2 Testimony of John H. Biggs, Chairman, President and CEO, Teachers' Insurance and Annuity Association-College Retirement Equities Fund (TIAA-CREF), and former member of the Public Oversight Board, before the Committee on February 27, 2002.

FN3 Testimony of Shaun O'Malley, Chairman, 2000 Public Oversight Board Panel on Audit Effectiveness, and former Chairman, Price Waterhouse LLP, before the Committee on March 6, 2002.

FN4 Testimony of Paul Volcker, Chairman of the Trustees of the International Accounting Standards Committee, and former Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, before the Committee on February 14, 2002.

FN5 The Public Oversight Board was created in 1977 as part of self-regulatory efforts by the accounting industry. In January 2002, the P.O.B. voted unanimously to disband, in "recognition of the obstacles to achieving this goal [i.e., effective self-regulation] which have been encountered in recent years, and given the proposal of the SEC in consultation with the AICPA and the SEC Practice Section Executive Committee, without input from the Public Oversight Board, to reorganize the self-regulatory structure. * * * " Resolution of the Public Oversight Board, January 20, 2002. Available at http://www.publicoversightboard.org/about.htm.

FN6 Testimony of Charles A. Bowsher, Chairman, Public Oversight Board, and former Comptroller General of the United States, before the Committee on March 29, 2002; testimony of Aulana L. Peters, Member, Public Oversight Board and former

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

(Leq.Hist.)

Commissioner, Securities and Exchange Commission (1984-88), before the Committee on March 19, 2002; Biggs Testimony, February 27, 2002.

FN7 Schedule A(25) of the Securities Act of 1933, 15 U.S.C. S 77(aa)(25) (emphasis added); see also section 13(a)(2) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. S 78m(a)(2), section 14 of the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, at U.S.C. S 79n, and section 30(g) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, 15 U.S.C. S 80a-29(g).

FN8 Graham, Dodd, and Cottle, Security Analysis, 108 (4th ed., 1962).

FN9 Testimony of Lee Seidler, former partner, Bear Stearns & Co. and Deputy Chair of the 1978 Commission on Auditors' Responsibilities, before the Committee on March 6, 2002.

FN10 Senator Enzi suggested that the bill require, not merely permit, that two Board members have an accountancy background.

FN11 Testimony of Harold M. Williams, former SEC Chairman (1977-81), before the Committee on February 12, 2002; Biggs Testimony, February 27, 2002; testimony of Joel Seligman, Dean and Ethan A.H. Shepley University Professor, Washington University School of Law, before the Committee on March 5, 2002; testimony of Bevis Longstreth, Member, 2000 Public Oversight Board Panel on Audit Effectiveness, and former Commissioner, Securities and Exchange Commission (1981-84), before the Committee on March 6, 2002; cf. testimony of Robert Glauber, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc., and former Under Secretary for Finance, Department of Treasury, under President Bush (1989-1992), before the Committee on March 5, 2002.

FN12 The Board itself will be a corporation created under the D.C. Nonprofit Corporation Act. It will be neither an agency nor establishment of the federal government, and its members and employees are not to be deemed to be federal officers or employees by reason of their Board service.

FN13 Testimony of Arthur Levitt, former SEC Chairman (1993-2000), before the Committee on February 12, 2002; Bowsher Testimony, March 19, 2002; testimony of L. William Seidman, former Chairman, Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation and Resolution Trust Corporation, and former partner, Seidman & Seidman, before the Committee on March 19, 2002.

FN14 See, e.g., Ruder Testimony, February 12, 2002; Seligman Testimony, March 5, 2002; Seidler Testimony, March 6, 2002.

FN15 The bill creates a right to interim SEC review of certain inspection-related disputes.

FN16 Levitt Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN17 Glauber Testimony, March 5, 2002. John Biggs said simply: "Accounting firms

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leg.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

must know that they cannot refuse to open their books or prevent their staff from cooperating with this new agency." Biggs Testimony, February 27, 2002.

FN18 The Board may request, but not require, the testimony of, or production of documents, in the possession of any other person (for example, an audit firm's client). Its rules may provide for procedures to seek issuance of a subpoena from the SEC to any person.

FN19 Fines imposed by the Board are to be used to fund a scholarship program for students in undergraduate or graduate programs in accounting.

FN20 Accounting Series Release No. 150, 3 SEC Dock. 275 (1973).

FN21 Testimony of Michael Sutton, former SEC Chief Accountant (1995-98), before the Committee on February 26, 2002.

FN22 Testimony of Richard Breeden, former SEC Chairman (1989-93), before the Committee on February 12, 2002.

FN23 Letter from James E. Burton, Chief Executive Officer, California Public Employees' Retirement System (CalPERS), to Chairman Paul S. Sarbanes, June 26, 2002.

FN24 Letter from John H. Biggs, Chairman, President and CEO, Teachers' Insurance and Annuity Association-College Retirement Equities Fund (TIAA-CREF), to Chairman Paul S. Sarbanes, June 28, 2002.

FN25 Testimony of John C. Whitehead, former Co-Chairman, Goldman Sachs & Co., and former Deputy Secretary of State, before the Committee on March 19, 2002.

FN26 Testimony of Walter P. Schuetze, former SEC Chief Accountant (1992-95), before the Committee on February 26, 2002.

FN27 Williams Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN28 Bowsher Testimony, March 19, 2002; Levitt Testimony, February 12, 2002; Volcker Testimony, February 14, 2002.

FN29 Statement of David Walker, Comptroller General of the United States, June 18, 2002.

FN30 "Analysis of the Failure of Superior Bank, FSB, Hinsdale, Illinois," Hearing before the Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs, February 7, 2002.

FN31 Sutton Testimony, February 26, 2002.

FN32 Longstreth Testimony, March 6, 2002.

FN33 Levitt Testimony, on February 12, 2002.

s. REPCase/1:207-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page §&-gef 7ქ

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

FN34 Williams Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN35 Whitehead Testimony, March 19, 2002.

FN36 Testimony of Lynn Turner, former SEC Chief Accountant (1998-2001), before the Committee on February 26, 2002.

FN37 Testimony of Roderick M. Hills, former SEC Chairman (1975-77), before the Committee on February 12, 2002.

FN38 O'Malley Testimony, March 6, 2002.

FN39 The "lead" partner is the partner who is in charge of the audit engagement. The "review" partner refers to the outside partner brought in to review the work done by the lead partner and the audit team.

FN40 Bowsher Testimony, March 19, 2002.

FN41 Turner Testimony, February 26, 2002.

FN42 Testimony of James E. Copeland, Jr., Chief Executive Officer, Deloitte & Touche LLP, before the Committee on March 14, 2002.

FN43 See, e.g., Seligman Testimony, March 5, 2002.

FN44 Testimony of Sarah Teslik, Executive Director, Council of Institutional Investors, before the Committee on March 20, 2002.

FN45 Testimony of Robert E. Litan, Director, Economic Studies Program, The Brookings Institution, before the Committee on March 14, 2002; testimony of Damon Silvers, Associate General Counsel, AFL-CIO, before the Committee on March 20, 2002; Bowsher Testimony, March 19, 2002.

FN46 Testimony of Ira Millstein, Senior Partner, Weil, Gotshal & Manges LLP, before the Committee on February 27, 2002; Whitehead Testimony, March 19, 2002; Biggs Testimony, February 27, 2002.

FN47 Levitt Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN48 Hills Testimony, February 12, 2002; Seligman Testimony, March 5, 2002.

FN49 Testimony of Howard M. Metzenbaum, Chairman, Consumer Federation of America, and former U.S. Senator, before the Committee on March 20, 2002.

FN50 Testimony of David Walker, Comptroller General of the United States, before the Committee on March 5, 2002.

FN51 Breeden Testimony, on February 12, 2002.

FN52 Teslik Testimony, March 20, 2002.

S. REPCASO 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 69-9 f 73

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

FN53 O'Malley Testimony, March 6, 2002; Teslik Testimony, March 20, 2002.

FN54 Breeden Testimony, on February 12, 2002.

FN55 Breeden Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN56 Testimony of Thomas A. Bowman, President and Chief Executive Officer, Association for Investment Management and Research, before the Committee on March 20, 2002.

FN57 Volcker Testimony, February 14, 2002.

FN58 Seligman Testimony, March 5, 2002.

FN59 For example:

Two of Enron's top officials who were also board members-Kenneth Lay and Jeffery Skilling-received personal loans from Enron. Mr. Lay received more than \$70 million in cash during one 12-month period and repaid the loan with his own Enron stock. Wall Street Journal (May 3, 2002).

WorldCom's board extended its former chief executive, Bernard Ebbers, a personal loan of \$366.5 million. Richard Waters, Pressure Forces Ebbers to Leave WorldCom, Financial Times (May 1, 2002).

Adelphia Communications made \$3.1 billion in off-balance sheet loans to its founder, John Rigas, reportedly without the knowledge of its shareholders or board. Richard Waters, Rigas Agrees to Give Up Adelphia, Financial Times (May 24, 2002).

In April, Qwest revealed in its proxy statement that it lent \$4 million to President and COO Afshin Mohebbi. It was reported that a portion of the loan will be used to pay the premium on his life insurance policy. Jim Seymour, Nacchio Dip: Qwest CEO Delays His Pay Raise, TheStreet.com (April 9, 2002).

Global Crossing Ltd. eliminated or substantially reduced the terms of \$18 million worth of personal loans the company made to two of its top executives in the months before the telecommunications company filed for bankruptcy protection, regulatory filings show. Elizabeth Douglass, Global Eased Loan Terms Compensation: The firm forgave or reduced advances to executives in the months before its Chapter 11 filing, L.A. Times (February 7, 2002).

AES Corp., a power producer, granted \$1.5 million personal loans to both its chief financial officer and an executive vice president in October to prevent them from being forced to immediately sell company shares due to margin calls. AES Makes Loans To Two Executives To Cover Margin Calls, Wall Street Journal (March 26, 2002).

FN60 Breeden Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN61 Millstein Testimony, February 27, 2002.

FN62 Bowsher Testimony, March 19, 2002.

FN63 Bowsher Testimony, March 19, 2002.

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

- FN64 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
- FN65 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
- FN66 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
- FN67 Breeden Testimony, February 12, 2002.
- FN68 Letter from Eliot Spitzer, Attorney General of the State of New York, to Chairman Paul S. Sarbanes, June 5, 2002.
 - FN69 Spitzer Letter, June 5, 2002.
- FN70 Testimony of John C. Coffee, Jr., Adolf A. Berle Professor of Law, Columbia University Law School, before the Committee on March 5, 2002 (internal citations omitted).
 - FN71 Seligman Testimony, March 5, 2002.
 - FN72 Coffee Testimony, March 5, 2002 (internal citations omitted).
 - FN73 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
- FN74 Testimony of Michael Mayo, Managing Director, Prudential Securities, Inc., before the Committee on March 19, 2002.
 - FN75 Turner Testimony, February 26, 2002.
 - FN76 Mayo Testimony, March 19, 2002.
 - FN77 Coffee Testimony, March 5, 2002.
 - FN78 Coffee Testimony, March 5, 2002 (internal citations omitted).
 - FN79 Spitzer Letter, June 5, 2002.
 - FN80 Coffee Testimony, March 5, 2002.
 - FN81 Coffee Testimony, March 5, 2002.
 - FN82 Seligman Testimony, March 5, 2002.
 - FN83 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
 - FN84 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
 - FN85 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
 - FN86 Bowman Testimony, March 20, 2002.
 - FN87 Mayo Testimony, March 19, 2002.

S. REPCase, 1:07-cv-10258-SHS Document 23-5 Filed 01/07/2008 Page 71-96 71

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leq.Hist.)

(Cite as: S. REP. 107-205)

FN88 Levitt Testimony, on February 12, 2002.

FN89 Spitzer Letter, June 5, 2002.

FN90 Whitehead Testimony, March 19, 2002.

FN91 Walker Testimony, March 5, 2002.

FN92 Hills Testimony, February 12, 2002; Williams Testimony, February 12, 2002; Breeden Testimony, February 12, 2002; Levitt Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN93 Breeden Testimony, February 12, 2002.

FN94 Coffee Testimony, March 5, 2002.

FN95 Coffee Testimony, March 5, 2002.

FN96 Turner Testimony, February 26, 2002.

FN97 Copeland Testimony, March 14, 2002.

FN98 SEC budget testimony for FY 2003 gives the number as over 17,000, Testimony Concerning Appropriations for Fiscal 2003 by Harvey L. Pitt, Chairman, U.S. Securities & Exchange Commission, before the Subcommittee on Commerce, Justice, State, and the Judiciary, Committee on Appropriations, United States House of Representatives, April 17, 2002, while SEC Release 33-8109 gives the number as 16,242, SEC Release 33-8109 (Proposed Rule: Framework for Enhancing the Quality of Financial Information Through Improvement of Oversight of the Auditing Process), http://www.sec.gov/rules/proposed/33-8109.htm at 71.

FN99 See Proposed SEC Release 33-8109 at footnote 111, page 111.

S. REP. 107-205, S. Rep. No. 205, 107TH Cong., 2ND Sess. 2002, 2002 WL 1443523 (Leg.Hist.)

END OF DOCUMENT

U.S. DISTRICT COURT
DISTRICT OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

JAN 79 7003

FILED

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE DISTRICT OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

In re Tyco International, Ltd.
Multidistrict Litigation (MDL 1335)

MDL DOCKET NO. 02-1335-3 ALL CASES

PRACTICE AND PROCEDURE ORDER NO. 5

The New York County District Attorney has intervened in this multidistrict litigation proceeding and seeks a stay of all discovery until he completes a parallel grand jury investigation and prosecutions of three of the defendants in this case.

Several of the defendants also seek to stay discovery until I rule on their anticipated motions to dismiss. They argue that a stay is required in the Securities Actions by the Private

Securities Litigation Reform Act ("PSLRA"), 15 U.S.C. § 78u-4

(b) (3) (B) (1997) ("stay provision"), and that prudence warrants a similar stay in the ERISA and Derivative Actions. I determine that the District Attorney's concerns can better be addressed by

targeted requests for protective orders, that document discovery should proceed in the ERISA and Derivative Actions, and that documents produced in the ERISA and Derivative Actions should be shared with counsel in the Securities Actions.

I.

A. The Civil Cases

Plaintiffs in various jurisdictions have filed more than 30 actions against Tyco and its directors and officers. These cases were consolidated by the Judicial Panel on Multidistrict Litigation and assigned to this court for case management. The consolidated cases are grouped into one of the following three categories, depending upon the theory of liability asserted by each suit: (1) Securities Actions; (2) ERISA Actions; and (3) Derivative Actions.

The Securities Actions plaintiffs allege that the defendants violated §§ 10(b) and 20(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, see, e.g., 15 U.S.C. §§ 78j, and Rule 10b-5 promulgated thereunder, by making material misrepresentations and failing to disclose material information regarding Tyco's accounting

practices and financial condition. They further allege that certain Tyco executives violated \$20A of the Exchange Act, see 15 U.S.C. § 78t-1, by selling large amounts of Tyco common stock while in possession of material, non-public information.

The ERISA Action plaintiffs, who were employed by Tyco and participated in its retirement plan by investing in Tyco stock, allege that the defendants violated provisions of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act, 29 U.S.C. § 1001 et. seq. (1999 & Supp. 2002). Specifically, they contend that the defendants breached their fiduciary duties, mismanaged Tyco's retirement plan, made material misrepresentations and failed to disclose material information regarding Tyco's accounting practices and financial condition. See 29 U.S.C. § 1104.

Lastly, the Derivative Action plaintiffs contend that Tyco's directors and officers breached their fiduciary duties by, among other things, failing to properly monitor Tyco's accounting practices and oversee its financial well-being. The Derivative Action suits also include allegations that the directors and executives committed corporate waste and grossly mismanaged the corporation.

B. The Criminal Cases

The New York County District Attorney has obtained an indictment against Dennis Kozlowski, Tyco's former Chief Executive Officer, and Mark Swartz, Tyco's former Chief Financial Officer. Both men are charged with one count of Enterprise Corruption under New York Penal Law Section 460.20(1)(a), one count of Conspiracy in the Fourth Degree, under New York Penal Law Section 105.10(1), and one count of Violating New York General Business Law Section 352-C(5). The indictment also charges Kozlowski and Swartz with numerous counts of Larceny in the First Degree under New York Penal Law Section 155.42 and Falsifying Business Records in the First Degree under New York Penal Law Section 175.10. The District Attorney has also obtained an indictment against Mark Belnick, Tyco's former general counsel, charging him with six counts of Falsifying Business Records. The District Attorney further represents that he is conducting a grand jury investigation that could lead to additional charges against the three defendants and others.

It is undisputed that the pending charges and the grand jury investigation arise from the same events that are at issue in this proceeding.

II.

A. The District Attorney's Request for a Stay

The District Attorney argues that if I allow discovery in this proceeding, it "will likely lead to the premature disclosure of sensitive information that could subvert the criminal prosecutions." Aff. of Mark Frasier Schell at ¶ 16. More particularly, he alleges that: (1) evidence of value in the criminal cases will become lost or corrupted; (2) witnesses in criminal cases will use discovery information to commit perjury; (3) witnesses in the criminal cases will be overburdened by having to respond to discovery in this proceeding; (4) my rulings might be inconsistent with rulings made by the judge in the criminal cases; and (5) issues will arise concerning the defendants' Fifth Amendment rights. While I am sensitive to these concerns, I am not persuaded that they warrant a blanket prohibition on discovery.

First, I am not proposing to allow the parties to take depositions or engage in other testimonial forms of discovery.

Thus, there is no danger that witnesses will be discouraged from cooperating in the criminal cases because of demands placed on

them in responding to deposition requests. Nor is it likely that discovery will affect the defendants' Fifth Amendment Rights. 1 Second, the District Attorney's unsupported assertion that evidence of value in the criminal cases will become lost or corrupted if I allow document discovery to proceed is not persuasive. If anything, document discovery will tend to preserve evidence which might otherwise be overlooked or destroyed. Third, I foresee little danger of inconsistent rulings in the state and federal cases. Other than on discovery issues, the only significant rulings that I will likely make in this case before the criminal cases are resolved will concern defendants' anticipated motions to dismiss and plaintiffs' anticipated motions for class certification. These rulings are unlikely to have any bearing on the criminal cases. Moreover, to the extent that I may be asked to rule on discovery disputes, I will pay substantial deference to any related rulings by the state court. Thus, the risk of inconsistent rulings is minimal.

I acknowledge the District Attorney's concern that witnesses in the criminal cases may exploit information obtained through

¹ It is significant in this regard that both Kozlowski and Belnick oppose the District Attorney's request for a stay.

discovery in this case to commit perjury. This concern, however, must be balanced against the significant interest that the parties in this proceeding have in obtaining an expeditious resolution of the pending claims. Given these competing interests, document discovery should proceed. The District Attorney should be notified of any discovery requests and given an opportunity to seek targeted protective orders pursuant to Fed. R. Civ. P. 26(c) to address any particularized concern that giving the parties access to certain documents will permit witnesses in the criminal cases to commit perjury.

B. Defendants' Request for a Stay

All of the defendants except Kozlowski and Belnick seek to stay discovery until I resolve their anticipated motions to dismiss. Their argument can be summarized as follows: (1) the Securities Actions assert claims that are subject to the stay provision; (2) the ERISA and Derivative Actions arise from the same course of conduct as the Securities Actions; and (3) allowing discovery in the ERISA and Derivative Actions will undermine any stay in the Securities Actions because discovery produced in the former actions inevitably will benefit the

plaintiffs in the Securities Actions. While I accept defendants' contention that the PSLRA ordinarily requires a stay of discovery in securities actions, I do not agree that a similar stay is warranted in the ERISA and Derivative Actions.

Congress enacted the stay provision to deter plaintiffs from filing frivolous securities claims in the hope that either the high cost of responding to discovery will force corporate defendants to settle or that discovery will reveal information that can be used to save an otherwise deficient claim from dismissal. See In Re WorldCom, Inc. Securities Lit., 2002 WL 31628566*4 (S.D.N.Y. 2002) (summarizing stay provision's legislative history). While the stay provision only applies to federal securities claims, see 15 U.S.C. § 78u-4(b)(3)(B), its purpose clearly would be undermined if litigants could circumvent the stay by using litigation tactics. To partially address this concern, Congress amended the PSLRA to authorize a federal court to stay discovery in parallel state court actions, see 15 U.S.C. \$78u-4(b)(3)(D)\$ (Supp. 2002). Further, at least one circuitcourt has held that discovery in a case subject to the stay provision should also be stayed with respect to supplemental

state law claims, <u>see SG Cowen Sec. v. U.S. Dist. Ct. for N.D. pf</u>

<u>Ca.</u>, 189 F.3d 909, 913 n.1 (9th Cir. 1999).

I would not hesitate to stay discovery in the ERISA and Derivative Actions if I were to determine that the plaintiffs filed them in an attempt to circumvent the stay provision. The evidence, however, does not support such a conclusion. The ERISA and Derivative Actions were filed as separate lawsuits by different counsel on behalf of different plaintiffs. The claims asserted in those actions are not frivolous and defendants do not claim that plaintiffs' counsel are working together to thwart the stay provision. Absent evidence of collusion, I will not stay discovery in the ERISA and Derivative Actions merely because they have been consolidated with the Securities Actions for pretrial purposes.

I am also unpersuaded by defendants' contention that a stay is warranted because the plaintiffs in the Securities Actions will derive an indirect benefit from the fact that I am allowing limited discovery in the ERISA and Derivative Actions. I recognize that if plaintiffs in the ERISA and Derivative Actions uncover new evidence of wrongdoing by the defendants, they are

likely to amend their complaints and thereby provide the plaintiffs in the Securities Actions with information that may be useful in drafting their own amended complaint. I fail to see, however, how such a result will encourage plaintiffs in future cases to file frivolous securities claims. In any event, any interest that the defendants have in delaying discovery does not override the legitimate interest that the plaintiffs in the ERISA and Derivative Actions have in obtaining an expeditious resolution of their claims.

A more difficult question is presented by plaintiffs' request in the Securities Actions for access to documents produced in the ERISA and Derivative Actions. The stay provision permits "particularized discovery" in an action subject to the stay to avoid "undue prejudice." 15 U.S.C. § 78u-4(b)(3)(B). Other courts have invoked this exception to give plaintiffs in securities cases access to information that has been made available to investigative agencies and plaintiffs in other actions. See WorldCom, 2002 WL 31628566 at *4-5; In Re Enron Corp. Sec. Derivative and ERISA Litig., 2002 WL 31845114 *1-2 (S.D. Tex. 2002). These courts reason that such discovery is

"particularized" because it is limited to the discovery documents that have already been produced to others and it prevents "undue prejudice" by placing all potential claimants on an equal footing with respect to discovery. See id. This approach makes sense in a case like this where (1) the Securities Action plaintiffs would be at a serious disadvantage if they are denied access to documents that are produced to the other plaintiffs and government investigators; (2) the defendants will not incur any additional costs if the Securities Actions plaintiffs are given access to the documents; (3) keeping all parties on an equal footing with respect to discovery serves important case management interests in this complex litigation; and (4) none of the claims at issue are frivolous.

CONCLUSION

For the reasons set forth in this Practice and Procedure Order, I grant plaintiffs' requests in the ERISA and Derivative Actions to engage in document discovery. Any documents produced in the ERISA and Derivative Actions shall also be made available to the plaintiffs in the Securities Actions. The District

Attorney shall be served with copies of any discovery requests. SO ORDERED.

Agul Barbadoso Chief Judge

January 3 2003

cc: Counsel of Record